ŠKODA

ŠKODA Rapid Owner's Manual

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index
The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

- Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- ▶ Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Denotes a registered trademark.
- M Indicates the texts displayed in the MAXI DOT screen.
- S Indicates the texts shown in the segment display.

Display
In this owner's manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided it is not otherwise stated.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

5JA012720AE

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.
You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer) ▸

5JA012720AE

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Owner's Manual
These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and to all related **models**.

This Owner's Manual describes all possible **equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, your vehicle **does not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety 6
General information 6
Correct and safe seated position 7

Seat belts 10
Using seat belts 10
Inertia reels and belt tensioners 13

Airbag system 14
Description of the airbag system 14
Airbag overview 15
Deactivating airbags 18

Transporting children safely 19
Child seat 19
Fastening systems 22

Using the system

Cockpit 25
Overview 24

Instruments and Indicator Lights 26
Instrument cluster 26
Indicator lights 30

Information system 37
Driver information system 37
Multifunction display (MFD) 39
MAXI DOT display 42
Service interval display 43

Unlocking and opening 45
Unlocking and locking 45
Anti-theft alarm system 49
Luggage compartment lid 50
Electric power windows 51

Lights and visibility 53
Lights 53
Interior lighting 58
Visibility 59
Windscreen wipers and washers 60
Rear mirror 61

Seats and head restraints 63
Seats and head restraints 63
Seat features 66

Transporting and practical equipment 68
Useful equipment 68
Luggage compartment 75
Roof rack system 78

Heating and air conditioning 80
Heating, ventilation, cooling 80

Communication and multimedia 85
Universal telephone installation GSM II 85
Voice control 89
Multimedia 90

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 93
Starting and turning off the engine 93
Brakes and parking 95
Manual gear changing and pedals 96
Automatic gearbox 97
Driving in an economical driving 100
Driving through water and driving off of made-up roads 101

Assist systems 102
Braking and stabilisation systems 102
Parking aid 103
Cruise Control System 104
START-STOP 105

Hitch and trailer 108
Hitch 108
Trailer 112

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 115
Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 115
Washing vehicle 118
Cleaning vehicle exterior 119
Interior care 122

Inspecting and replenishing 125
Fuel 125
Engine compartment 127
Engine oil 130
Coolant 132
Brake fluid 133
Vehicle battery 134

Wheels 138
Tyres and wheel rims 138
Tyre control display 141
Reserve and temporary spare wheel 142
Winter operation 143

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 145
Emergency equipment 145
Changing a wheel 147
Tyre repair 151
Jump-starting 153
Towing the vehicle 154
Remote control 156

Emergency unlocking/locking 157
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 158

Fuses and light bulbs 159
Fuses 159
Bulbs 162

Technical data

Technical data 168
Vehicle data 168

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
A2DP	a Bluetooth software profile for a one-way transfer of audio data
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CO_2 in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
EU	European Union
GSM	Global System for Mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MDI	Inputs for connecting external devices
MFD	Multifunction display
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
SIM card	a card for the identification of the mobile network operator
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo charging and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off ____ 6
Driving safety ____ 6
Safety equipment ____ 6

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

Read and observe ! on page 6 first.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
✓ Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
✓ Secure all items of luggage.
✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
✓ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 19, *Transporting children safely*.
✓ Adopt the correct seated position » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

Read and observe ! on page 6 first.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

✓ Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

Read and observe ! on page 6 first.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

› Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
› Belt force limiters for the front seats.
› Belt tensioners for the front seats.
› Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
› Side airbags.

› Head airbags.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height[1].
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver 7
Adjusting the steering wheel position 8
Correct seated position for the front passenger 8
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats 9
Examples of incorrect seated positions 9

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 19, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seated position for the driver

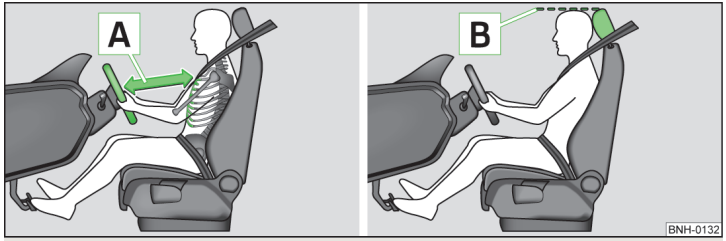

Fig. 1 **The correct distance of the driver to the steering wheel/correctly adjusted head restraint**

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 1. Adjust the steering wheel » page 8, *Adjusting the steering wheel position*.
✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head [2] B » Fig. 1.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10, *Using seat belts*.

[1] Not valid for sports seat.
[2] Not valid for sport seats.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 63.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

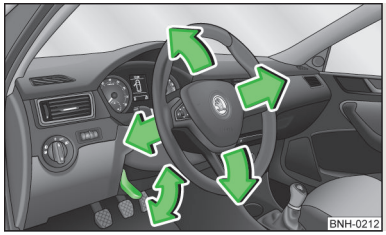

Fig. 2
Adjusting the steering wheel position

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swivel the lever underneath the steering wheel downwards » Fig. 2.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
› Push the lever upwards to the stop.

WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position during the journey – risk of accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head [1] B » Fig. 1 *on page 7*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10, *Using seat belts*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 63.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 18, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

[1] Not valid for sport seats.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head B » Fig. 1 *on page 7*.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10, *Using seat belts*.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 19, *Transporting children safely*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 63.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not kneel on the seats.
- ✓ Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear seats.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.
- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- ✓ Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- ✓ Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

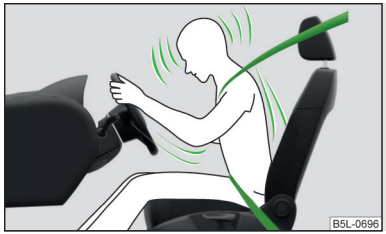

Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision 11
Fastening and unfastening seat belts 12
Belt height adjustment on the front seats 13

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 19, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 12, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 67.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 124.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

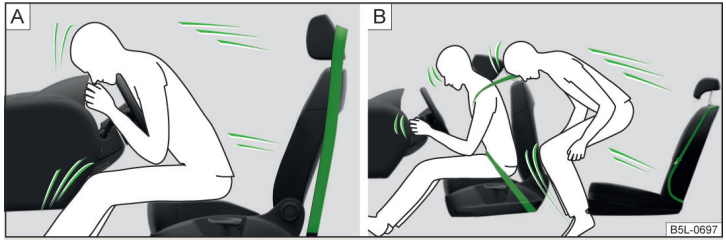

Fig. 4 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 10 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 – B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

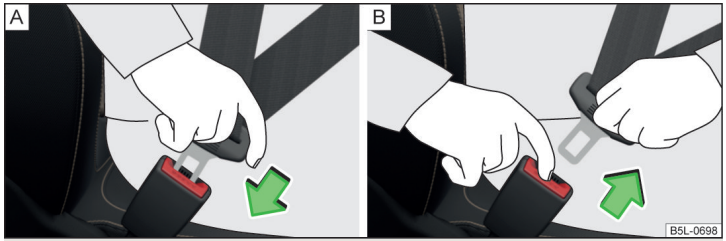

Fig. 5 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

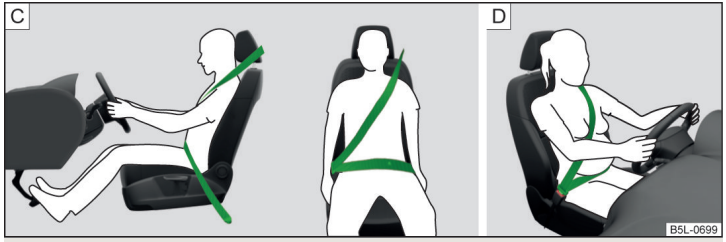

Fig. 6 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

Read and observe ! on page 10 first.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint[1] before fastening the seat belt » page 7.

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 5 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - B; the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

[1] Not valid for sports seat.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

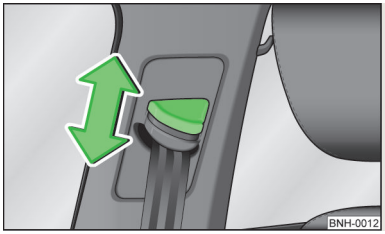

Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 10 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the seat belt height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels 13
Belt tensioners 13

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

i Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 14
Airbag deployment 14

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 35.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 15.
- Side airbags » page 16.
- Head airbags » page 17.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 35.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 18.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 18.

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
› Driver's front airbag.
› Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
› Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
› the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
› the hazard warning light is switched on;
› all the doors are unlocked;
› the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 15
Side airbags 16
Head airbags 17

Front airbags

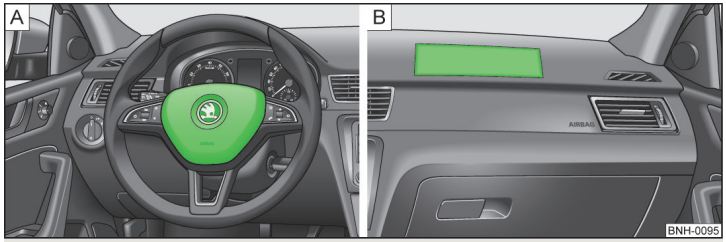

Fig. 8 **Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dashboard**

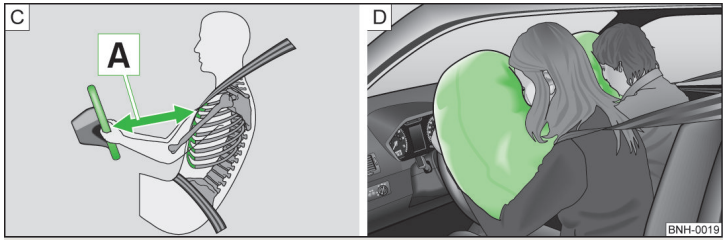

Fig. 9 **Safe distance to steering wheel/gas-filled airbags**

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel » Fig. 8 - A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the storage compartment » Fig. 8 - B.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 9 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 18, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering AIRBAG can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbags, the lettering AIRBAG is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Side airbags

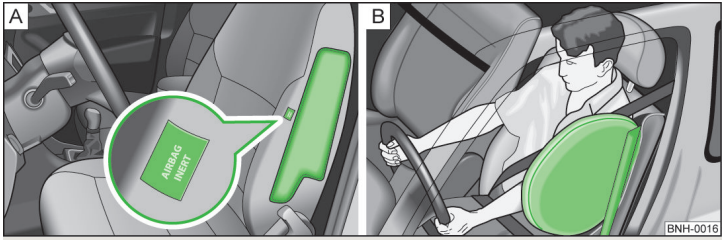

Fig. 10 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat/gas-filled side airbag**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the front seat backrests » Fig. 10 - A.

When the side airbags » Fig. 10 - B are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 21, *Child safety and side airbag*.

WARNING (Continued)

- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 19, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

In vehicles with side airbags a label with the lettering AIRBAG is located on the front seat backrests.

Head airbags

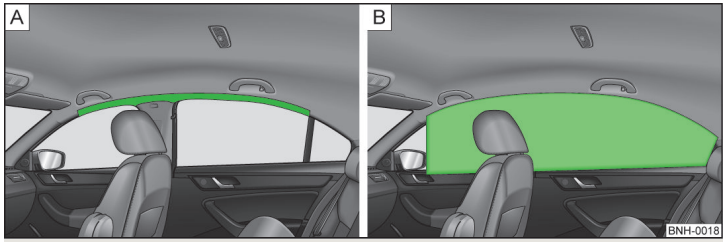

Fig. 11 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 11 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 11 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.

WARNING (Continued)

- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 115.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags ____ 18
Deactivating the front passenger airbag ____ 18

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 19, *Transporting children safely*.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 18.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light lights up for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
- The indicator light OFF; 3 » Fig. 12 *on page 18* lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Fig. 12 **Key switch for front passenger airbag/warning light for front passenger airbag activation/deactivation**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 12 **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› After switching on the ignition, check whether the warning light 3 OFF [1] is illuminated in writing PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is illuminated in the centre panel.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 12 **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› After switching on the ignition, check whether the warning light 3 OFF is not illuminated in writing PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is not illuminated in the centre panel.

! WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the OFF warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
  - Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
  - The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

! CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

[1] The warning light OFF comes on for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, goes out for about 1 second and then comes on again.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat 20
Child safety and side airbag 21
Classification of child seats 21
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt 21

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

! WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 20, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a backwards-facing child restraint system on a seat that is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause the child severe injury or even death.

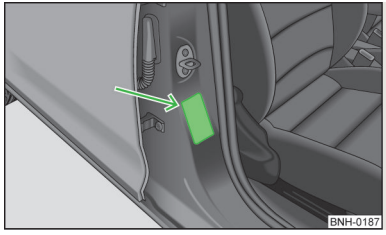

Fig. 13
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

Fig. 14 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 19 first.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 18, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 13. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 14.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Child safety and side airbag

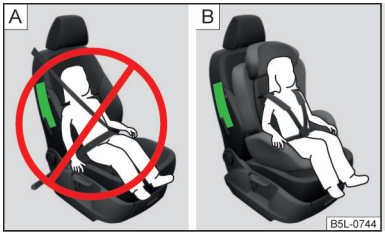

Fig. 15
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 19 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 15 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 15 - B.

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 19 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe ! and ! on page 19 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outer	Rear seat center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system 22
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system 22
Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system 23

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system

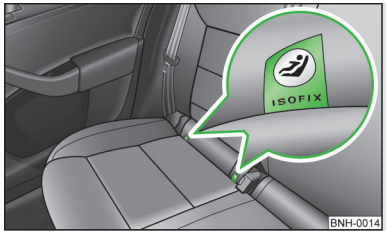

Fig. 16
Labels on the ISOFIX system

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place. The points are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 16.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the anchor eyelets intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk to life!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the usability of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system

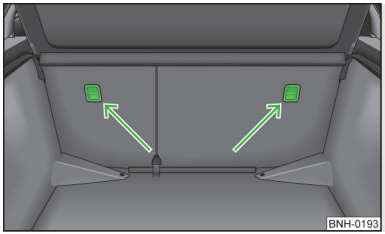

Fig. 17
Anchor eyelets on the TOP TETHER system

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the back of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 17.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.

WARNING (Continued)

- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

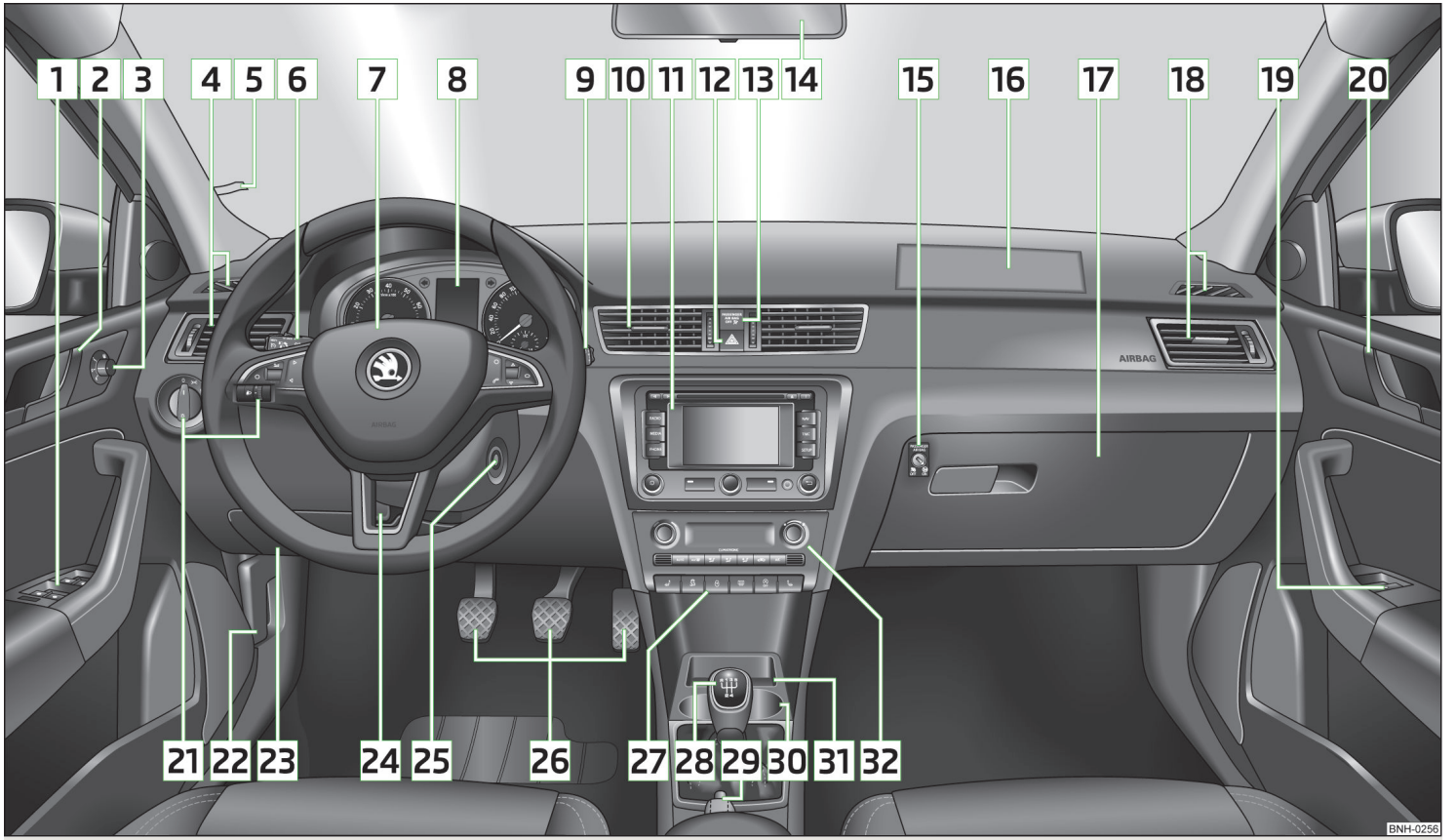

Fig. 18 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electrical power windows — 52
2 Door opening lever — 49
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 62
4 Air outlet vents — 81
5 Parking ticket holder — 68
6 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 55
› Speed regulating system — 104
7 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 15
› with pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone — 85
› with buttons for the operation of the information system — 37
8 Instrument cluster — 26
9 Operating lever:
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 61
› Information system — 37
10 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 81
11 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Radio
› Navigation system
12 Button for hazard warning light system — 57
13 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 18
14 Interior rear-view mirror — 62
15 Key switch for switching off the passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 18
16 Front passenger airbag — 15
17 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 73
18 Air outlet vents — 81
19 Power window in the front passenger door — 51
20 Door opening lever — 49
21 Light switch and headlight beam control (on the dash panel) — 53, 54
22 Bonnet release lever — 128
23 Fuse box in the dashboard — 160
24 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 8
25 Ignition lock — 94
26 Pedals — 97
27 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
› Seat heater on the front left seat — 66
› TCS — 102
› Central locking system — 48
› Rear window heater — 59
› START STOP — 105
› Seat heater on the front right seat — 66
28 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 97
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 98
29 Handbrake lever — 96
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Cup holder — 69
› Multimedia holder — 72
› Ashtrays — 70
31 Storage compartment — 69
32 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the heating — 82
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 82
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 83

Note

The position of some of the controls on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 18. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 26
Revolution counter 27
Display 27
Speedometer 27
Coolant temperature gauge 27
Fuel gauge 28
Counter for distance driven 28
29
Display of the second speed 29
Auto Check Control 29

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

Fault display
If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the **Error** message will appear in the display.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

Note

When the ignition is on, the instrument cluster is illuminated[1]. The brightness level is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient lighting.

Overview

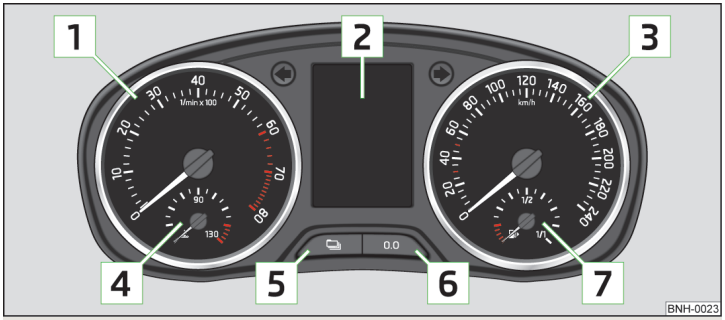

Fig. 19 **Instrument cluster**

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 27
› with warning lights » page 30
2 Display » page 27
3 Speedometer » page 27
› with warning lights » page 30
4 Coolant temperature gauge[1] » page 27
5 Button for display mode:
› Time settings » page 29
› Enable/disable the display of the second speed[2] » page 29
› Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service[2] » page 43
6 Button for:
› Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 28
› Setting the time
› enable / disable the mode selected by means of the 5 key
7 Fuel gauge[1] » page 28

[1] Applies to vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.
[2] Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

Revolution counter

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 19 *on page 26* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 38.

! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Display

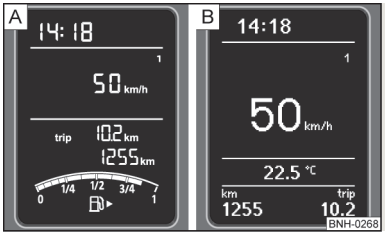

Fig. 20
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

Display types » Fig. 20

A Segment display

B MAXI DOT display.

The following information will be displayed.

› Distance travelled » page 28

› Time » page 29

› Details of the information system » page 37

› Details of the service interval display » page 43

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage.

Speedometer

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

The speedometer 3 » Fig. 19 *on page 26* displays the current speed in km/h or mph.

Warning against excessive speeds

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[1]. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

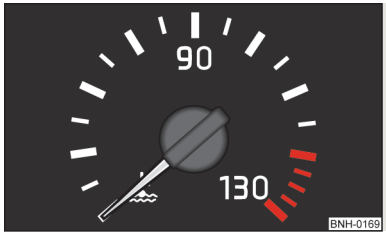

Fig. 21
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

The display » Fig. 21 provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

In vehicles with a segment display, the coolant temperature is indicated only by the lighting up or going out of one of the warning lights » page 32, *Coolant*.

[1] This function only applies to certain countries.

Cold range
If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range
If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 32, *Coolant*.

CAUTION
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Fuel gauge

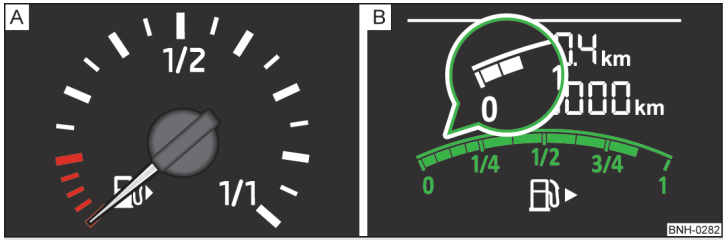

Fig. 22 **Fuel gauge**

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

The display provides information on the fuel level in the container.

Fuel gauge types » Fig. 22

A Indication in the instrument cluster with the MAXI DOT display
B Indication in the display of the instrument cluster with the Segment Display

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres.

The warning light lights up when the amount of fuel reaches the reserve zone » page 35.

The reserve zone is indicated by the red area of the scale » Fig. 22 - A or by displaying only the last two segments of the scale » Fig. 22 - B in the magnifying glass.

CAUTION
Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note
- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ▶ next to the icon within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

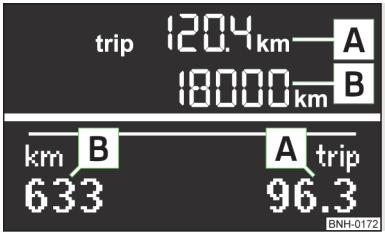

Fig. 23
Display: Segment display / MAXI DOT display

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

Display » Fig. 23
A Counter for distance travelled (trip)
B Odometer

Counter for distance travelled (trip)
The counter indicates the distance you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press and hold the 6 » Fig. 19 *on page 26* button.

Odometer
The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Note
If the second speed display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer.

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

Use buttons 5 and 6 to set the clock » Fig. 19 *on page 26*.
5 The choice to change the display (hours or minutes).
6 The change of the displayed value.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **Time** in the Time menu » page 42.

Display of the second speed

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

The display can show the current speed in mph[1].

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different speed units.

MAXI DOT display.
The display of the second speed can be set in the **Alt. speed dis.** menu item » page 42, *Settings*.

Segment display
› Press the 5 » Fig. 19 *on page 26* key repeatedly until the odometer display flashes » page 28.
› Press the 6 key while the display flashes.

The second speed is displayed instead of the odometer.

The display of the second speed can be disabled in the same way.

Auto Check Control

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the icons in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 30, *Indicator lights*.

The menu item **Vehicle status** is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message exists. After selecting this menu, the first of the error messages is displayed.

If there are several error messages, the display will show **1/3**, for example, below the message. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning symbols in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 31
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor defective	» page 31
	Problem with the engine oil pressure	» page 29
	Clutches of the automatic gearbox DSG are too hot	» page 29

Problem with the engine oil pressure
If the symbol is shown in the MAXI DOT display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot
A symbol in the MAXI DOT display indicates that the temperature of the automatic gearbox DSG clutches is too high.

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!

do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the icon goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 57. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Note

▪ If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 37, *Using the information system* .

▪ As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Indicator lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 30
Brake system 31
Seat belt warning light 31
Generator 31
Door open 31
Engine oil 31
Coolant 32
Power steering 32
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 32
Traction Control System (ASR) 33
Antilock brake system (ABS) 33
Rear fog light 33
Bulb failure 33
Exhaust inspection system 34
Glow plug system (diesel engine) 34
Engine performance check (petrol engine) 34
Diesel particulate filter (Diesel motor) 34
Fuel reserve 35
Airbag system 35
Tyre inflation pressure 35
Windscreen washer fluid level 36
Turn signal system 36
Fog lights 36
Cruise control system 36
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox) 36
Main beam 36

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

WARNING

▪ Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

▪ If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 57. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

▪ The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning notes must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 127, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h for at least 3 seconds while the handbrake is applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The indicator light **illuminates** if the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Brake fluid: Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 134 ».

WARNING

- If the warning light is displayed simultaneously with warning light » page 33, *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 127, *Engine compartment*.

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten seat belts.

The indicator light **goes off** after the respective seat belt has been fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 20 km/h, the warning light **flashes** and you will hear an acoustic signal.

The warning signal is switched off and the indicator light is **permanently lit** if the driver and front passenger have not fastened their seat belts within the next 90 seconds.

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the warning light **illuminates** when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately. The electrical system requires checking.

If the indicator light (cooling system fault) lights up in addition to the indicator light while driving, **do not continue driving!**

Stop the engine - there is a risk of engine damage! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Door open

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The indicator light **illuminates** if one or several doors or luggage compartment lid are opened.

Engine oil

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light flashes (low oil pressure)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil pressure: Engine off! Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 131.

If the warning light **flashes**, **do not drive any further** , even if the oil level is correct! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The indicator light lights up (oil quantity too low)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check oil level!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 131.

The warning light will **go out** if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will **come on** again after driving about 100 km.

The indicator light flashes (engine oil level sensor faulty)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light **flashes** several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The indicator light remains **illuminated** until the engine reaches operating temperature[1]. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the warning light **lights up** or **flashes**, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check coolant! Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the coolant level » page 133.
› If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » page 133.

If the indicator light **does not illuminate** after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the indicator light is still **illuminated,** then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

› Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 161, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the indicator light is nevertheless **still illuminated**, **do not continue your journey!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Power steering

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the indicator light is **illuminated**, there is a fault in the power steering system.

The power steering operates with reduced steering assist or does not function at all.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **flashes** to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: stabilization control (ESC)

or

Error: traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons.

[1] Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

The ESC is fully functional again if the warning light **no longer illuminates** after you switch the engine back on.

Further information » page 102, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction Control System (ASR)

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **flashes** to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ASR might be switched off due to technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

The ASR is fully functional again if the warning light **no longer illuminates** after you switch the engine back on.

Further information » page 102, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

In the event of an ABS fault, the other braking and stabilization systems are turned off » page 102, *Braking and stabilisation systems* .

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!
- If the warning light is displayed simultaneously with warning light » page 31, *Brake system*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the rear fog light is switched on.

Bulb failure

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if a lamp is faulty or if an external vehicle lamp is faulty .

The indicator light **illuminates** within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty lamp is switched on.

The following message, for example, may be shown in the MAXI DOT display.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting have several light bulbs. The indicator light only lights up if all bulbs in the parking light (in one rear light) or the licence plate lighting are faulty[1]. For this reason, regular check that these light bulbs are working correctly.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** after the ignition has been switched **on**. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC Engine performance check (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the indicator light EPC **illuminates**, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Diesel particulate filter (Diesel motor)

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the indicator light **illuminates**, soot has accumulated in the filter.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ 4th or 5th gear (automatic transmission: position S).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon **goes out**.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does **not go out** and the warning light begins to **flash**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Diesel particle filter: Owner's manual!

The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light also **illuminates**.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

[1] Applies to vehicles with START-STOP system.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter, we recommend that regularly driving short distances be avoided.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the fuel level is less than 7 litres.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Please refuel. Range: ... km

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The text in the display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Airbag

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

› The warning light **illuminates** for approx. 4 seconds after switching **on** the ignition and then **flashes** again for approx. 12 seconds afterwards.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Airbag / belt tensioner deactivated.

If the air bag was switched off using the key-operated switch on the side of the dash panel on the passenger side:

› The indicator light **illuminates** for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched **on**;

› Switched off airbags are indicated by the indicator light OFF in the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF logo lighting up in the middle of the dash panel » Fig. 12 *on page 18*.

WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized company.

Tyre inflation pressure

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The indicator light **lights up**, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres.

› Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » page 138.

If the indicator light **flashes**, there is a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

› Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light **flashes** again after re-starting the engine, then the help of a professional service provider must be sought immediately.

Further information » page 142, *Setting*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light **illuminates**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Top up wash fluid!

Top up with liquid » page 130, *Windscreen washer system*.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Either the left or the right warning light **flashes** depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light **flashes** at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to **flash**.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the fog lights are operating.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the cruise control is active » page 104.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, operate the brake pedal.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the main beam or the headlight flasher is operated.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the information system 37
Display a low temperature 38
Gear recommendation 38
Door, boot or engine compartment warning 39

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems.

This information and advice is shown in the instrument cluster display or indicated by the illumination of the corresponding indicator light in the instrument cluster.

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

- Data relating to the multi-function display (MFD) » page 39.
- Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 42.
- Service interval display » page 43.
- Auto Check Control » page 29.
- Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 98.

WARNING

Concentrate fully on your driving at all times! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

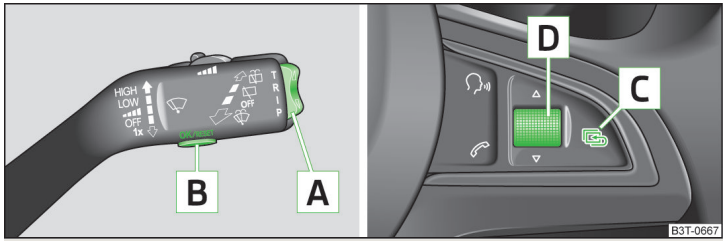

Fig. 24 **Buttons / wheel: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 37 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 24.

Description of the operation

Button / wheel » Fig. 24	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or below for a longer time	Select data / set data values
	Press top or below for a longer time	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 42
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Press briefly	To go up one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 42
	Press and hold button	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 42
D	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Display a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 37 first.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the following icon appears on the display in front of the temperature display ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the ❄ icon appears immediately.

Prompt in the segment display[1]
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the temperature display » page 40, *Outside temperature* will show up with the following icon in front ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the temperature display and the ❄ icon appear immediately.

After pressing button A » Fig. 24 *on page 37*, the most recently displayed data is shown.

! WARNING

Even at outside temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be present on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for an indication of whether there is black ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

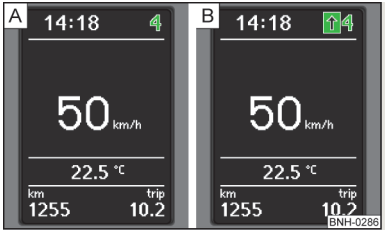

Fig. 25
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

Read and observe ! on page 37 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption.

Display » Fig. 25

A Optimal gear engaged
B Recommended gear

Recommended gear
The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

The **recommended** [2] gear and the arrow icon [3] is displayed.
› ↑ Recommends that you shift to a **higher** gear.
› ↓ Recommends that you shift to a **lower** gear.

If for example ↑4 is shown in the display with vehicles that have **manual gearboxes** this indicates that it is better to shift from a lower gear to the 4th gear.

If for example ↑4 is shown in the display with vehicles that have **automatic gearboxes** and are in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic), this indicates that it is better to shift from the 4th gear to a higher gear.

[1] Applies to vehicles with the multifunction display (MFA).
[2] With vehicles that have an automatic gearbox and in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic) the **currently engaged gear is** shown.
[3] For vehicles with segment display the arrow is displayed behind the gear indication.

WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

For the sake of the environment

A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, boot or engine compartment warning

Read and observe ! on page 37 first.

Vehicles with a MAXI DOT display
If at least one door, the boot or bonnet is open, the display indicates the relevant **open** door, boot or bonnet vehicle icon.

Vehicles with a segment display
If at least one door or the tailgate is open, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up » page 31.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory 39
Information overview 40
Warning at excessive speeds 41

The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

The multifunction display only operates when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **MFD** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 42, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out some of the information » page 42, *Settings*.

WARNING
- Concentrate fully on your driving at all times! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at outside temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be present on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for an indication of whether there is black ice on the road.

CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage.

Note
- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Memory

Fig. 26
Multi-function display - memory display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 39 first.

In memory the values of elements of the multifunction display(e.g. average fuel consumption) are recorded.

The multifunction display is equipped with two memories, **1** and **2**.

Display of the selected memory in the display at the position A. » Fig. 26

1 Single-trip memory
2 Total trip memory

Select memory
› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 40.

Confirm the element again to switch between the individual memories.

Reseting
› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 40.
› Select the desired memory.
› Press and hold button B or adjustment wheel D » Fig. 24 *on page 37*.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)
The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)
The total-trip memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 1 999 kilometres driven (S), and a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes or 9 999 kilometres driven (M).

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.
› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe ! and ! on page 39 first.

The information overview of the Multifunction Display (the number of items displayed is different depending on equipment).

Outside temperature
The current outside temperature is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display this information is always shown.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that point in time » page 39, *Memory*.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes (S) and 99 hours and 59 minutes (M). The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption
The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km[1]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[2].

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km[1].

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » page 39, *Memory*. After erasing the memory, no value is displayed until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and with the same style of driving as before.

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.
[2] On some models in certain countries, – -.- km/ltr. is displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), a fuel consumption of 10 l./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is updated according to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that moment in time » page 39, *Memory*.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km (S) and 9 999 km (M). The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 39, *Memory*.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current driving speed
The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer 3 » Fig. 19 *on page 26*.

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range of 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, **– –.–** symbols are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning at excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, e.g. for the maximum permissible speed in towns » page 41, *Warning at excessive speeds*.

Warning at excessive speeds

Read and observe ! and ! on page 39 first.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item[1].
› Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
› By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (Segment display) appears in the display at the same time as the set threshold.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

[1] If no value is set the output value 30 km/h is automatically displayed.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu 42
Settings 42
Compass point display 43

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle.** Depending on the vehicle equipment, it also provides you with data relating to the radio, multifunction display (MFD), mobile phone, navigation system, automatic gearbox » page 97 and devices connected via the MDI input.

WARNING

Concentrate fully on your driving at all times! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage.

Main menu

Read and observe ! and ! on page 42 first.

Press and hold button A or C » Fig. 24 *on page 37* to activate the **MAIN MENU**. By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 39
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 85;
- **Vehicle status** » page 29
- **Settings** » page 42

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu » page 37, *Using the information system*.
- If the display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- Using the factory-fitted radio or navigation system » *Radio operating instructions* or» *navigation system operating instructions*.

Settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 42 first.

You can change certain settings by means of the MAXI DOT display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language
You can set the language for the display texts here.

MFD data
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, the speed and the switching on and off of the acoustic signals when exceeding this speed can be adjusted. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » page 138, *Tyres and wheel rims*.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display.

Winter tyres: max. speed ... km/h.

Units
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Alt. speed dis.
Here, the display of the second speed in mph[1] can be activated.

Further information » page 29, *Display of the second speed*.

Service
The days and kilometres remaining until the next service can be displayed here.

Factory setting
The display functions can be restored to their factory settings here.

Compass point display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 42 first.

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an abbreviation for each point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown on the top left-hand corner of the display.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display ____ 43
Prompt in the segment display ____ 44
Resetting the service interval display ____ 44

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The service due date is automatically displayed on the display and this information can be displayed manually if necessary.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Note
Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Oil change service
If an oil change service is **due**, the following message appears: **Oil change in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Oil change now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Inspection
If an inspection is **due**, the following message appears: **Inspection in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Inspection now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can view the remaining distance and days until the next service appointment at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Service** menu item » page 42, *Settings* or from the **Vehicle status** in the main menu of the Maxi DOTdisplay. » page 42, *Main menu* .

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Prompt in the segment display

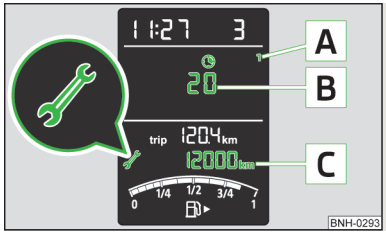

Fig. 27
Segment display: Example of a message

Explanation of illustration » Fig. 27

Service due

A Differentiating between types of service

B Days remaining until the next service interval

C Kilometres remaining until the next service interval[1)]

Differentiating between types of service

The service type is determined by the number in position A » Fig. 27.

1 Oil change service

2 Inspection

Service due

If a service becomes **due**, then the following information is displayed for about 10 seconds » Fig. 27 .

› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.

› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.

› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

As soon as the due date for the service **has been reached**, the flashing icon and the message **OIL CHNG** or **INSPEC_** appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service interval

Press button 5 » Fig. 19 *on page 26*continuously at any time when the ignition is switched on to display the remaining distance and days until the next service interval.

Information on the **oil change service** is displayed at first, followed by information on the **inspection** when button 5 is pressed again.

› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.

› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.

› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display, the values of a new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

[1)] The kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed instead of the odometer.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking with the remote control 46
Unlocking/locking with the key 47
Safe securing system 47
Individual settings 47
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside 48
Child safety lock 48
Opening/closing a door 49

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and tailgate at the same time.

The safe securing system » page 47 is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks[1] are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » !.

The following is true after unlocking

› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, comes on.
› The safe securing system is switched off[1].
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated[2].

The following is true after locking

› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior lights connected over the door contact go off.
› The safe securing system is switched on[1].
› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated[2].

Displaying an error

If the indicator light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Failure of the central locking

Upon failure of the central locking system the key only unlocks and locks the driver's door. The other doors and the tailgate can be opened and closed in an emergency.

› Emergency locking of the door » page 157.
› Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 158.

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of injury and accidents! These individuals might also not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life.

! CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 157.
- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.

[1] This function only applies to certain countries.
[2] Applies to vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system.

Note

- If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, which will be able to provide you with a new one.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control

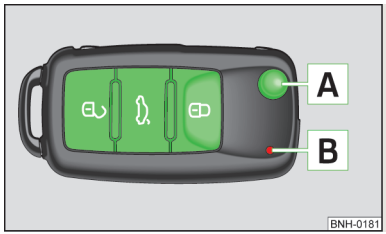

Fig. 28
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

Unlocking / locking using the remote control key » Fig. 28

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the boot lid
- A Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B Warning light

Unlocking the vehicle
The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe lock system[1)] or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Locking the vehicle
The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

Unlocking / locking the tailgate
By pressing the symbol key for about 1 s, only the boot lid is unlocked.

The lid is locked » page 51 by closing.

Checking the battery condition
If the red indicator light B » Fig. 28 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty.

Replace the battery » page 157.

CAUTION

- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

Note
A ŠKODA partner can also activate/deactivate the acoustic signals on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system.

[1)] This function only applies to certain countries.

Unlocking/locking with the key

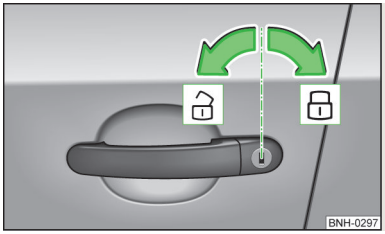

Fig. 29
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

The key allows you to unlock and lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door.

Unlocking / locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 29

- Unlocking
- Locking

! CAUTION

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Safe securing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle cannot be opened from the inside any more.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching off the ignition.

M Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!
S CHECK DEADLOCK

Switching off
The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› By locking twice within 2 seconds.
› By disabling the interior monitoring » page 50, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching on
The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-off display
The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Switch-on display
The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

i Note

This function only applies to certain countries.

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

Opening a single door
This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the command is repeated.

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button.

Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

Note
Individual settings can be carried out in a specialist workshop.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside

Fig. 30
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

When the vehicle has not been locked from outside, the » Fig. 30 button can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Unlocking / locking » Fig. 30

If the icon in the button is lit, the vehicle is locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.
› Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

! WARNING
- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- If the Safelock system is switched on » page 47, the door opening levers and the central locking buttons do not operate.

! CAUTION
If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Child safety lock

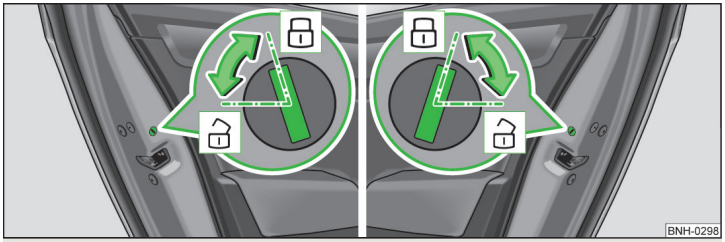

Fig. 31 **Rear door: left / right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the cooling system on and off » Fig. 31

Switching on
Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Opening/closing a door

Fig. 32 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

Opening from the outside

› Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A » Fig. 32 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

› Pull on door opening lever B of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating 50
Interior monitor and towing protection 50

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people trying to break into the vehicle.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

When is the alarm triggered?

› Opening the bonnet.
› Opening the boot lid.
› Opening the doors.
› Manipulation of the ignition lock.
› Vehicle inclination » page 50.
› Movement in the vehicle » page 50.
› Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
› Uncoupling the trailer » page 112, *Driving with a trailer*.
› Unlocking the driver's door with the key using the lock cylinder (if subsequently within 15 s, the ignition is not turned on). For some countries that the alarm is triggered immediately after unlocking.

Switching off the alarm

The alarm is switched off by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the alarm system is fully operational.

i Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe ! on page 49 first.

Activating
The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds, the alarm system is automatically activated again.

Interior monitor and towing protection

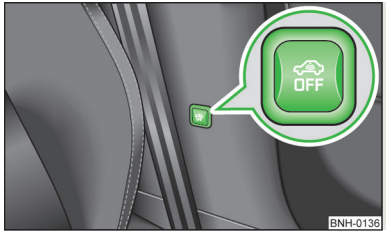

Fig. 33
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 49 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating
The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button OFF » Fig. 33 on the B column of the driver's side. The illumination of the symbol OFF in the button changes from red to orange.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION
- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked, even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing 51
Delayed locking of the boot lid 51

! WARNING
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, as otherwise it could crack – risk of injury!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Note

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing

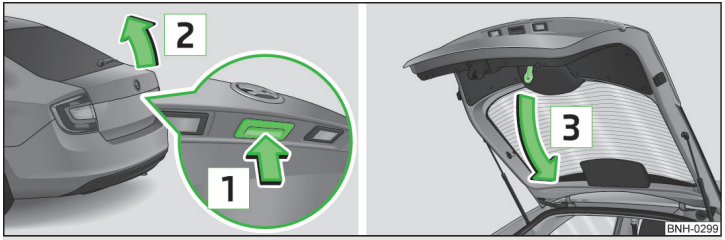

Fig. 34 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening / closing tailgate » Fig. 34

1 Unlocking the door
2 Open flap
3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After activation of delayed locking, the boot lid can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol button on the remote control key.

Electric power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the windows 52
Force limit 52

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter » page 52. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- Deactivating the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors is recommended (safety push button) S when children are being transported in the rear seats » Fig. 35 *on page 52*.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 121, *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

▪ When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

▪ The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the windows

Fig. 35 **Buttons on the driver's door/in the rear doors**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

Power window buttons » Fig. 35

A Driver's door
B Passenger door
C Left rear door:
D Left rear door
S Safety pushbutton

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The driver's window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety switch S » Fig. 35. The buttons for the electrical power windows at the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety push-button S again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light in the safety switch S lights up.

Force limit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Parking light and low beam 53
Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT) 54
Turn signal and main beam 55
Automatic driving lamp control 55
Fog lights 56
Fog lights with CORNER function 56
Rear fog light 56
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 57
Hazard warning light system 57
Parking light 58
Driving abroad 58

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 36 *on page 53*. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the given light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Parking light and low beam

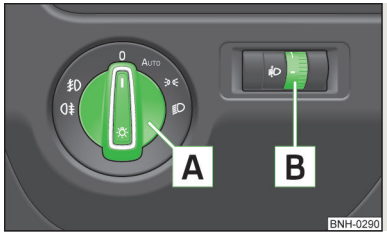

Fig. 36
Light switch and control dial for headlight range adjustment

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Light switch positions - turning the switch A » Fig. 36

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Automatic switching lights on and off » page 55

Switching on the parking light or parking lights[1] » page 58

Turn on the low beam[1]

[1] On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the symbol also lights up in the light switch.

Light switch positions - pulling the switch A

Switch on the front fog lamp » page 56
Switching on the rear fog light» page 56

Headlight range control - knob B

Turning the rotary switch from the position – in 3 gradually adjusts the headlight range control and thereby shortens the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- An audible warning signal will sound if the light switch is in the or position, the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened. The audible warning signal is switched off after a few seconds or as a result of door contact when the driver's door is closed. However, the side lights remain on to illuminate the parked vehicle if necessary.
- **If leaving the vehicle without needing the parking lights on, always turn the light switch to position 0.**

Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 36 *on page 53*.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The parking aid is activated.

Deactivating the function

› Switch off the ignition.
› Remove the fuse for the daytime running lights » page 160, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Activating the function

› Switch off the ignition.
› Use a fuse of appropriate amperage for the daytime running lights » page 160, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Disable function on vehicles with the START-STOP system or with the automatic driving light control

› Switch off the ignition.
› Slide the turn signal light lever (» Fig. 37 *on page 55*) downwards and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition – wait until the left-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition – an audible signal sounds which confirms the deactivation of the function.
› Release the turn signal stalk.

Function on vehicles with the START-STOP system or with the automatic driving light control

› Switch off the ignition.
› Slide the turn signal light lever (» Fig. 37 *on page 55*) upwards and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition – wait until the right-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition – an audible signal sounds which confirms the activation of the function.
› Release the turn signal stalk.

WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front nor the rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

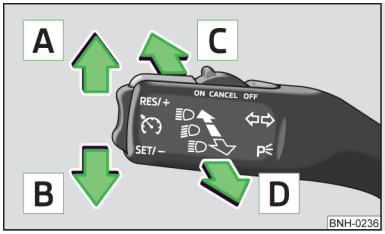

Fig. 37
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Lever positions

A	⇨	Switch on right turn signal
B	⇦	Switch on left turn signal
C	≡D	Switch on high beam (spring-loaded position)
D	≡D 1x	Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

Main beam
The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

When the high beam or headlight flasher is on, the warning light ≡D lights up in the instrument cluster.

Flashing
When the left flashing light is switched on, the warning light ⇦ flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the right flashing light is switched on, the warning light ⇨ flashes in the instrument cluster.

The flashing light is turned on even before the upper and lower pressure point. This is advantageous with some manoeuvres. For example, when changing lanes **hold** the control lever of each pressure point.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"
If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

! WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note
The headlight flasher can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

Automatic driving lamp control

Fig. 38
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 38, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

Switching on/off of the light is regulated on the basis of data gathered by the sensor fitted in the holder of the rear-view mirror below the windscreen.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol ≡D next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving light control during rain
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 38.
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position 1 or wiping - position 2 or 3 is turned on » page 61, *Activating the windscreen wipers and washers*.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Fog lights

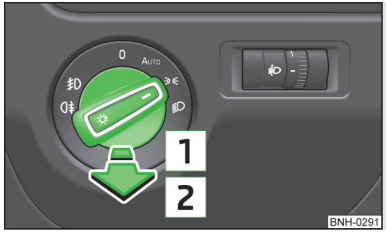

Fig. 39
Light switch - Switch front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 39 .
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 30.

Fog lights with CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on each side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER **function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.**

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 39 *on page 56* .
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights » page 56, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the light switch to the position and is pulled out directly to the position 2. This switch can only be put into one position.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 30.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

COMING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time after leaving the vehicle.

LEAVING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time when approaching the vehicle.

The function switches on the following light, depending on the equipment fitted.

› Parking lights,
› Low beam
› Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors
› Licence plate light

COMING HOME

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 38 *on page 55*.
✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The function was activated before leaving the vehicle by briefly switching on the headlight flasher » page 55, *Turn signal and main beam* .
✓ The driver's door was open - within 60 seconds after turning off the ignition.

The light **goes out** 10 seconds after closing all of the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 38 *on page 55*.
✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The vehicle was unlocked with the radio remote control.

The light **goes off** after 10 seconds or when locking the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this function is activated, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Note

Poorer visibility are evaluated on the basis of information that is collected from the sensor mounted in the interior mirror holder.

Hazard warning light system

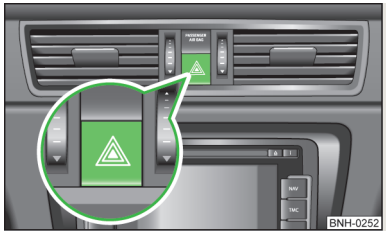

Fig. 40
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Switching on/off

› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 40.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking light

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The parking light is provided for a temporary lighting of the parked vehicle.

Parking light P switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Place the control lever into position A or B as far as it can go » Fig. 37 *on page 55* - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light P is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides
› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 36 *on page 53* and lock the vehicle.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the symbol in the light switch also lights up when the two-sided parking light is switched on.

CAUTION

Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded, especially over short distances.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The low beam is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), asymmetric headlight adjustment can dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Interior lighting

Front interior light

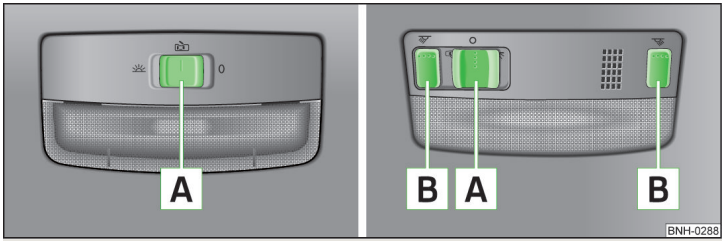

Fig. 41 **Front interior light - Version 1 / Version 2**

Positions of sliding switch A » Fig. 41
- Switching on
- 0 Switching off
- Operating with the door contact switch

Switch for reading light B » Fig. 41
- Switching left reading lamp on/off
- Switching right reading lamp on/off

Conditions for the lighting operation with the door contact switch
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.
› The vehicle is unlocked.
› One of the doors is opened.
› The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
› The vehicle is locked.
› The ignition is switched on.
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

The activated light turns on automatically for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Rear interior light

Fig. 42
Interior lights at the rear

Interior light, rear - Press the switch A » Fig. 42

Switching on/off

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light[1].

› When the front interior lighting is **switched on**, the rear interior lighting also turns on automatically.

› When the front interior lighting is **switched off**, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heater ____ 59
Front sun visors ____ 60

Rear window heater

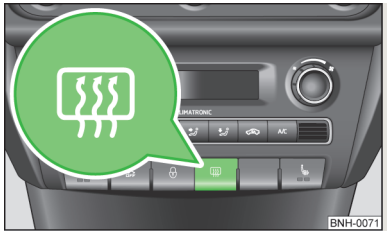

Fig. 43
Dash panel: Button for rear window heater

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the rear window.

Button for rear window heater » Fig. 43

Switch the heating on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 7 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 137, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.

[1] This function only applies to certain countries. In some countries, the light at the rear is controlled independently from the light at the front.

Front sun visors

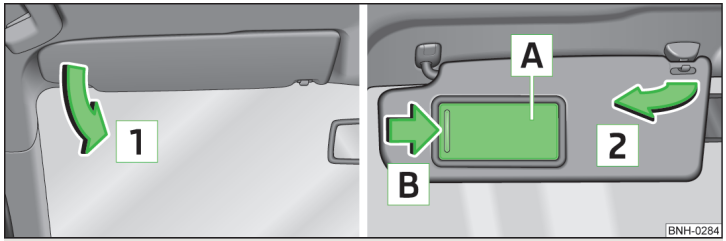

Fig. 44 **Fold down the cover / swivel cover to the door and slide the mirror cover**

The sun visors protect you from the blazing sun.

Operation of the sun visor » Fig. 44

1 Fold down the cover
2 Swivel cover towards the door
A Makeup mirror with cover
B Slide mirror cover

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating the windscreen wipers and washers 61
Headlight cleaning system 61

The wiper and washer system provide a good view through the windscreen or rear window.

The windshield wipers and the windshield washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 130.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 158.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping in rain only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the windscreen.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.

Note

- To avoid streaking, the wiper blades must be kept clean » page 122.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Activating the windscreen wipers and washers

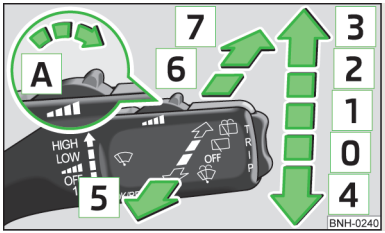

Fig. 45
Operating lever: Windscreen wipers and washer settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 60 first.

Lever positions

0	OFF	Wipers off
1	....	Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
2	LOW	Slow windscreen wiping
3	HIGH	Rapid windscreen wiping
4	1x	Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » page 158, (spring-loaded position)
5		Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
6		Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
7		Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
A	....	Switch for setting the desired break between the individual wiper passes or the speed of the automatic wiping in rain (operating lever in position 1)

Interval windscreen wiping ....
The wiping intervals are also speed-dependent regulated.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain ....
The wiping intervals are controlled depending on the rain intensity.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 1-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 1-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position 6.**

Note
The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 60 first.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting 5 » Fig. 45 *on page 61*), when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 121, *Headlight glasses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION
Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror 62
Exterior mirror 62

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.
- The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

Interior mirror

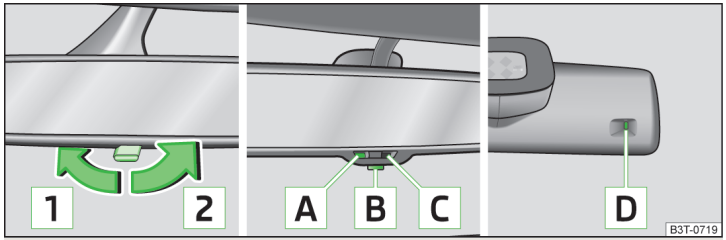

Fig. 46 **Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-darkening / light sensor**

Read and observe ! on page 62 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 46

1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 46

A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
C Light sensor
D Light sensor on the back of the mirror

If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming mirror » page 62, ! in section *Introduction*.

CAUTION

Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the light striking the sensors is not affected by other objects.

Exterior mirror

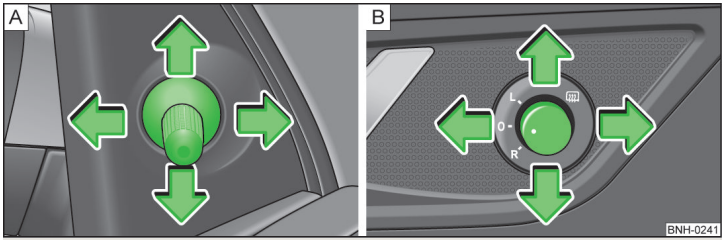

Fig. 47 **Front door - Operation of outside mirrors: mechanical / electrical**

Read and observe ! on page 62 first.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Mechanically-adjustable mirrors
By moving the rotary knob in the direction of the arrow, the mirror surface can be adjusted to the desired position » Fig. 47 - A.

Electrically-adjustable mirrors
By moving the rotary knob in the direction of the arrow, the mirror surface can be adjusted to the desired position » Fig. 47 - B.

The knob can be moved into the following positions.

L Adjust the left mirror
R Adjust the right mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
Mirror heater

Folding in the exterior mirrors
The whole exterior mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To put it back into its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING
Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

Note
- The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
- If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and head restraints

Seats and head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats 64
Head restraints - adjusting height 64
Head restraints - Removing and installing 65

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following:
› Reaching the controls safely and quickly,
› A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
› **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING
- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat, except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

Note
After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Adjusting the front seats

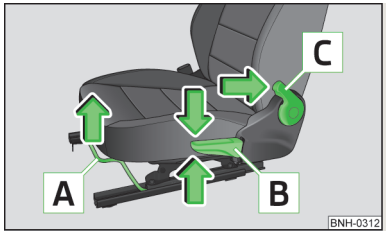

Fig. 48
Control elements at the seat

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 48

A Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
B Adjusting height of seat
C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull lever A » Fig. 48 (in the centre) in the direction of arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Again push or pull the lever B » Fig. 48 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› The seat back release (do not lean on).
› Pull the lever C » Fig. 48 in direction of arrow and with your back set the desired inclination of the seat back.

After releasing the lever the seat backrest will remain in the set position.

Head restraints - adjusting height

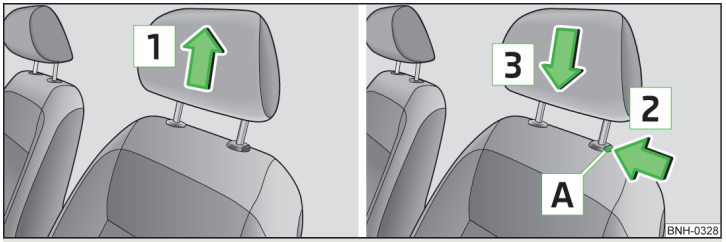

Fig. 49 **Set the height of the front headrest**

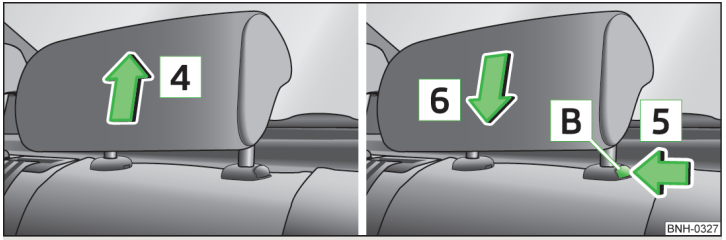

Fig. 50 **Set the height of the back headrest**

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The head restraints and the front seats must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Front restraint

› Push the restraint **upwards** in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 49.
› To move the restraint **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold while pressing the restraint in the direction of arrow 3.

Rear restraint

› Push the restraint **upwards** in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 50.
› To move the restraint **down**, press the securing button B in the direction of arrow 5 and hold while at the same time pressing the restraint in the direction of arrow 6.

WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the respective rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

Note

For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. This headrest cannot be adjusted in height.

Head restraints - Removing and installing

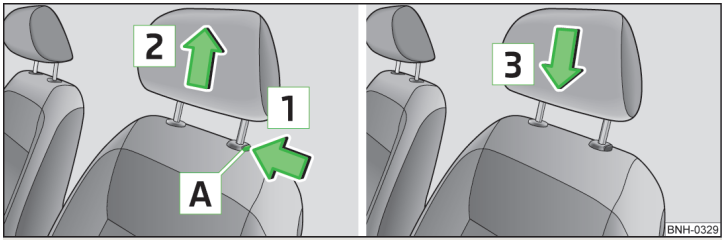

Fig. 51 **Removing and installing front head restraints**

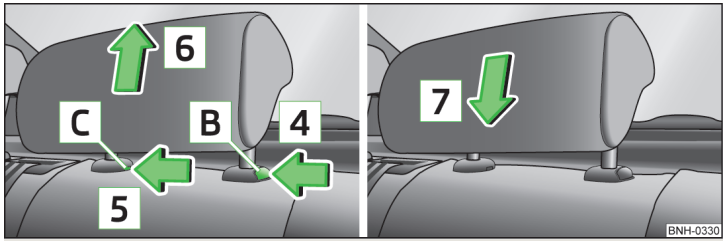

Fig. 52 **Removing and installing rear head restraints**

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Front restraint

› Pull the restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1. and pull the support in the direction of arrow 2.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 3 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear restraint

› Pull the restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button B in the direction of arrow 4, while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the securing button in opening C in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow 6.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 7 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

WARNING

Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.

Note

For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests cannot be removed.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seat heating 66
Front armrest 66
Rear armrest 67
Seat backrests 67

Front seat heating

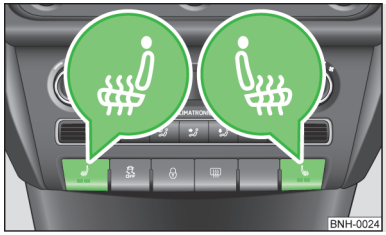

Fig. 53
Buttons for heating the front seats

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Buttons for the seats heating » Fig. 53

- Left seat heating
- Right seat heating

Switching on

› Press the corresponding symbol button or » Fig. 53.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is reduced until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heating on the driver or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heating in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
  - The seats are not occupied by people.
  - Items are fastened or stored items on the seats, such as a child seat, a bag and the like.
  - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » page 124.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 137, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest

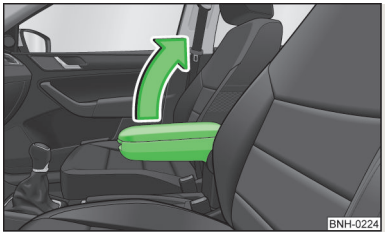

Fig. 54
Adjusting armrest

Setting the height

› Lift the armrest fully upwards in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 54 and then move it back down completely.
› Move the armrest into one of the 5 locking positions.

The armrest includes a storage compartment » page 72.

Rear armrest

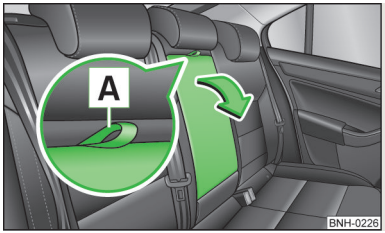

Fig. 55
Fold the armrest forward

Folding forward

› Pull on the loop A » Fig. 55 and fold the armrest forward in the direction of the arrow.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 69.

Seat backrests

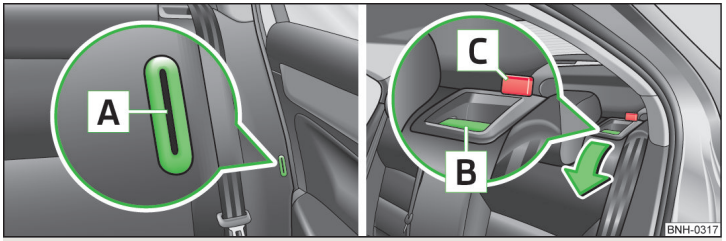

Fig. 56 **Opening for inserting the belt tongue / fold the seat backrest forwards**

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can also be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

[1] If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Folding forward

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests [1].

› Put the belt tongue into the opening A » Fig. 56 insert into the side cladding - safety position.
› Press the release lever B and fold the back seat rest forward in the direction of the arrow.

Folding backwards

› If you removed the head restraint, you need to reinsert it with the backrest tilted slightly forwards.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the locking button B clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin C is hidden.

! WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder 68
stowage compartments in the doors 68
Storage compartment in the centre console 69
Cup holders 69
Cigarette lighter 70
Ashtray 70
12-Volt power outlet 71
Waste container 71
Multimedia holder 72
Storage compartment in the front arm rest 72
Glasses compartment 73
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 73
Clothes hook 74
Storage pockets on the front seats 74
Net pockets on the front seat rest 74

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – there is the risk of an accident.
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder

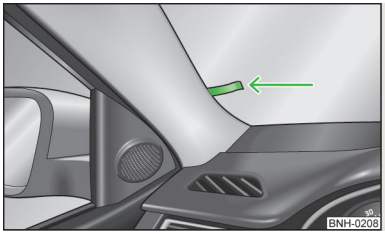

Fig. 57
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The note holder » Fig. 57 is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

stowage compartments in the doors

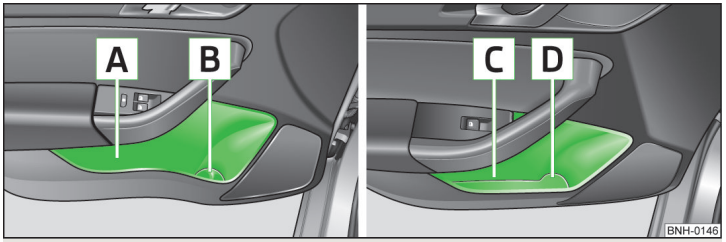

Fig. 58 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 58

A Storage compartment in the front doors
B Bottle compartment in the front doors
C Storage compartment in the rear doors
D Bottle compartment in the rear doors

WARNING

In order to ensure that the operating range of the side airbag is not impaired, area A » Fig. 58 of the storage compartment must only be used for storing objects that do not protrude.

Note

- In area B of the storage compartment of the front doors, a bottle can be housed with a max. content of 1.5 l.
- In area D of the storage compartment of the rear doors, a bottle with a max. content of 0.5 l can be stored.

Storage compartment in the centre console

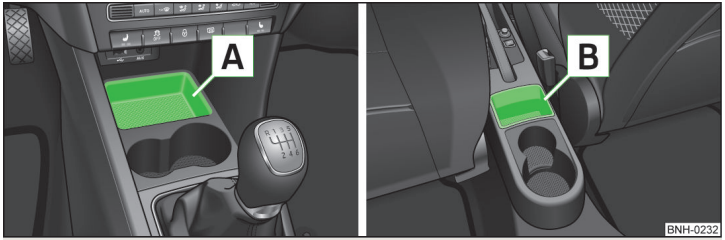

Fig. 59 **Non-lockable compartment, front / rear**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Non-lockable compartment » Fig. 59

A In the front centre console
B In the rear centre console

Cup holders

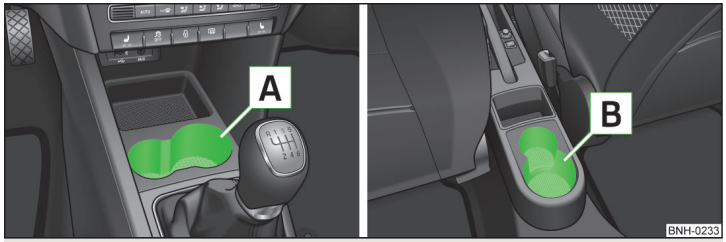

Fig. 60 **Cup holder at the front/rear**

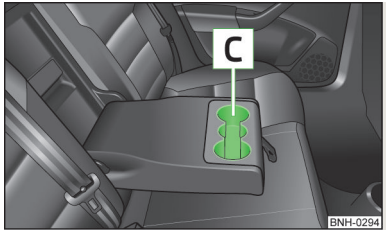

Fig. 61
Cup holder in rear armrest

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Placement of the cup holders » Fig. 60 » Fig. 61

A In the front centre console
B In the rear centre console
C In the rear armrest

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the drinks holders, as the vehicle occupants could be endangered if sudden braking occurs or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter

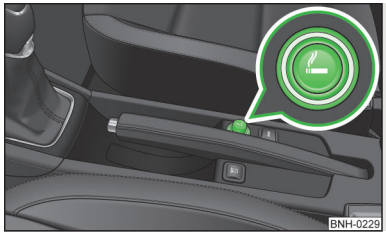

Fig. 62
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The cigarette lighter is located in the front centre console » Fig. 62.

Using the system

› Press in the button of the cigarette lighter.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.

Note

- The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 71, *12-Volt power outlet*.
- Further information » page 115, *Service work, adjustments and technical alterations*.

Ashtray

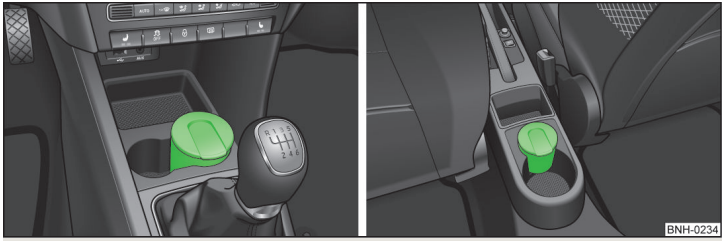

Fig. 63 **Ashtrays: front/rear**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing

› Pull the ashtray » Fig. 63 out and upwards.

Installing

› Insert the ashtray vertically.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray at the cover – risk of breakage.

12-Volt power outlet

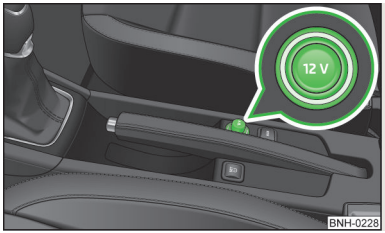

Fig. 64
12-Volt power socket

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The 12-volt electrical outlet (hereinafter referred to only as socket) in the front center console » Fig. 64.

Use

› Remove the power socket cover or the cigarette lighter.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » !.

WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

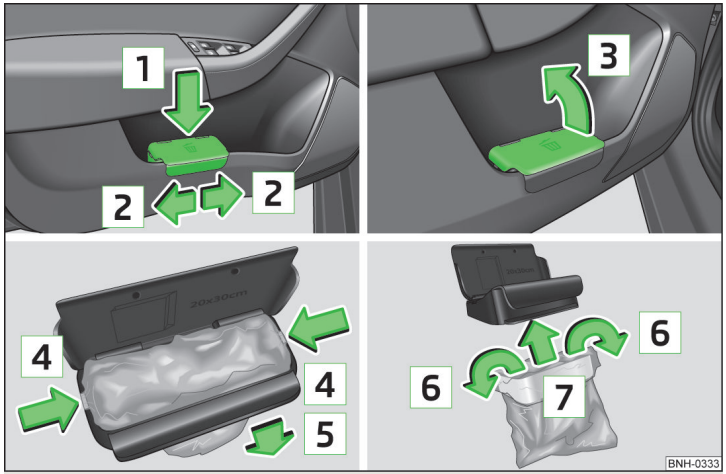

Fig. 65 **Waste container: Insert and move / open / replace bag**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors » page 68.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 65.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow 2.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 65.

Open/close waste container

› Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 65.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Push the two catches of the inner frame out of the container body in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 65.
› Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the inside frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

! WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

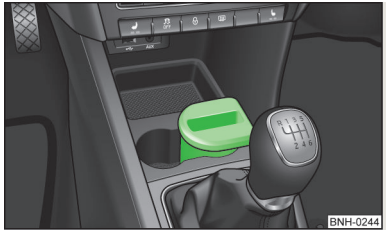

Fig. 66
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

You can use this holder to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

The multimedia holder is located in the front centre console » Fig. 66.

! WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment in the front arm rest

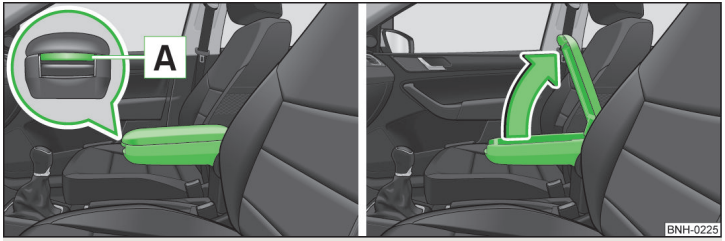

Fig. 67 **Opening the storage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Opening

› Press the button A at the front of the armrest » Fig. 67.
› Lift the lid of the storage box in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Fold the lid of the storage box back in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 67 until it audibly clicks into place.

Glasses compartment

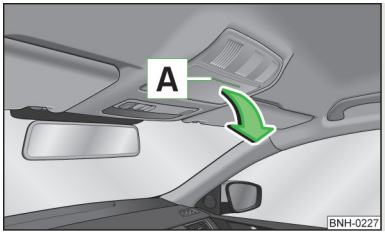

Fig. 68
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Opening

› Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in area A » Fig. 68.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 68 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The open compartment restricts the driver's view - there is a danger of accidents!

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – they may be damaged.
- The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 0.25 kg.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

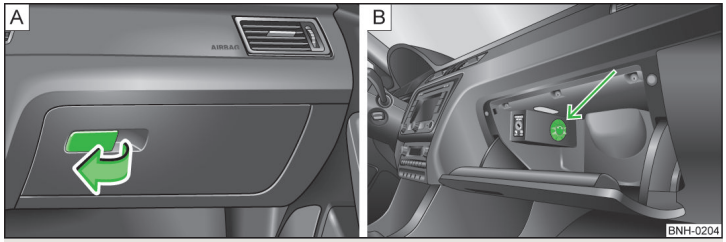

Fig. 69 **Open tray / control air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Opening

› Pull the lid handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 69 - A and fold down the lid.

Closing

› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Air supply into the storage compartment

› Turn the control dial » Fig. 69 - B anti-clockwise to the limit to open the air supply.
› Turn the control dial - anti-clockwise to close the air supply.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

- A 1 litre bottle (max. capacity) can be stored in the storage compartment on the front passenger's side.
- When the storage compartment is opened, a light lights up.
- If the cooling of the storage compartment is not used, we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

Clothes hook

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing; this may reduce the effectiveness of the head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats

Fig. 70
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 70 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Never put heavy items into the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Net pockets on the front seat rest

Fig. 71
Meshed pocket

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The net pockets are used for storage of small and light objects, such as mobile phones and the like.

The net pockets are located on the inner sides of the front seat backrests » Fig. 71.

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the meshed pockets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the meshed pockets is 150 g.
- Never put large objects into the meshed pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges – risk of damaging the meshed pockets.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 76
Fixing nets 76
Hooks 76
Luggage compartment cover 77
"Parking position" of the boot cover 77
Storage compartments in the boot 78
Double-sided floor covering 78
Class N1 vehicles 78

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or by using the fixing nets » page 76.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light
The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Store the objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps that are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 9, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid open or unlatched, otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 139, *Service life of tyres*.

Fastening elements

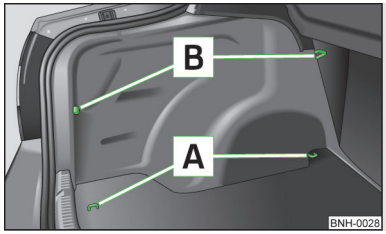

Fig. 72
Fasteners

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

Fasteners » Fig. 72

A Lashing eyelets for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
B Fastening elements and eyelets **only** for fastening fixing nets

The front eyelet B is located behind the folding rear seat backrest » Fig. 72.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes A is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Fixing nets

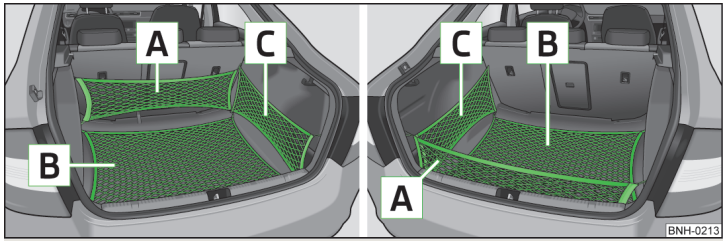

Fig. 73 **Fastening examples for nets**

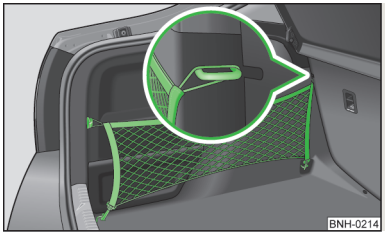

Fig. 74
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 73

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Hooks

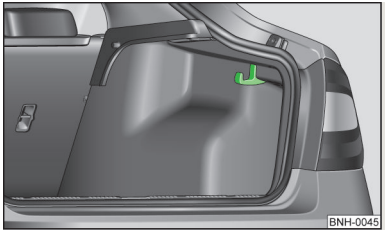

Fig. 75
Hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The hook is used to affix small items of luggage such as bags.

The hooks are located on both sides of the luggage compartment » Fig. 75.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Luggage compartment cover

Fig. 76 **Secure luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe and on page 75 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

› Unhook the support straps A » Fig. 76 from the boot.
› On the underside of the cover, in the area between the bolts, tap B.
› Remove the cover.

The dismantled luggage compartment cover can be stowed away behind the rear seat backrest in the so called "parking position" » page 77.

Installing

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Position the mounts on the cover C » Fig. 76 onto the side trim panel via bolts B.
› Interlock the cover by lightly knocking on the top side of the cover in the area between the bolts.
› Hook the support straps A onto the tailgate.

WARNING

No objects are to be placed on the boot cover. This could endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the luggage compartment cover is 1 kg.
- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.
- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The mounts on the cover C » Fig. 76 must be engaged into the bolts on the side trim panel B.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover in the lower position.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the seal of the boot lid when it is in the opened position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.

Note

- If the support straps A » Fig. 76 are attached to the boot, then the boot cover will raise when the boot is opened.
- After removing the luggage compartment cover, store it in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

"Parking position" of the boot cover

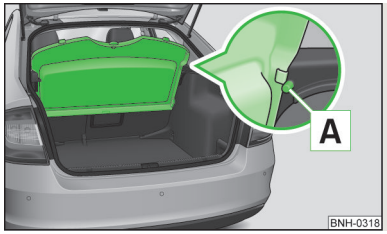

Fig. 77
Parking position of the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe and on page 75 first.

The boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest.

Adjusting

› Slide the dismantled cover between the rear seat backrest and the bolt A » Fig. 77.

WARNING

The luggage compartment cover in the "parking position" restricts the driver's view at the back.

Storage compartments in the boot

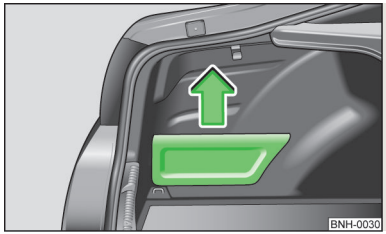

Fig. 78
Remove the tray cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The side compartment covers can be removed to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

Removing/Inserting

› Grasp the top part of the cover and remove it in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 78.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

CAUTION

- The storage compartments are designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage the storage compartment or the luggage compartment lining.

Double-sided floor covering

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

fixing points for base support 79
Roof load 79

WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstance – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- When dealing with roof rack systems, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the extended sliding/tilting roof does not hit any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

fixing points for base support

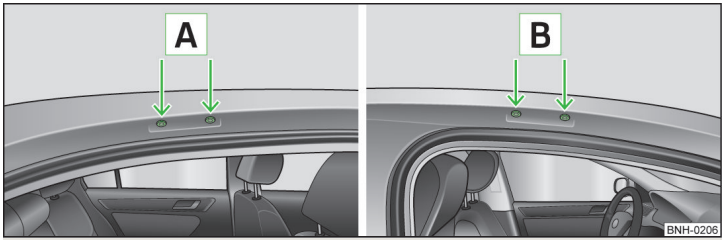

Fig. 79 **Attachment points rear / front**

Read and observe and on page 78 first.

Installation location of the attachment points for roof bars » Fig. 79

A Rear attachment points

B Front attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

Read and observe and on page 78 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents 81
Air distribution control 81
Heating 82
Air conditioning (manual air conditioning) 82
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 83
Efficient handling of the cooling system 84
malfunctions 84

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate re-circulated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 81.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting.
- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
  - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
  - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
  - Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free from ice, snow or leaves, for example, to ensure that the heating and cooling system works properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Note

The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.

Air outlet vents

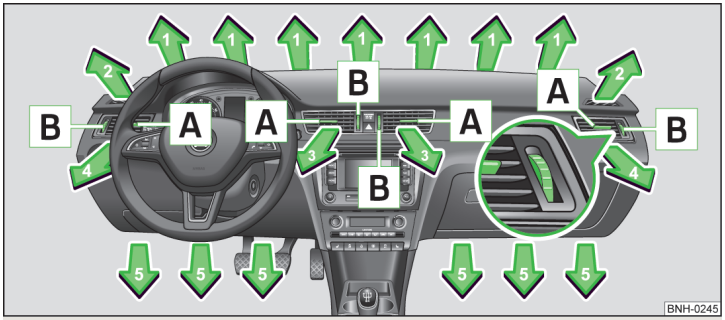

Fig. 80 **Air outlet vents**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 80 and the outlets can also be opened and closed individually.

Changing the air flow direction

› To change the height of the air flow, turn the horizontal fins upward or downward using the movable adjuster A » Fig. 80.
› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A to the left or to the right.

Open/close

› Turn the regulator B » Fig. 80 upwards or downwards.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet.

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5
	4, 5
	3, 4

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with objects of any kind.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

Recirculated air mode mostly prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heating and air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

To turn the recirculation mode **on or off,** press the Symbol key .

The air recirculation mode is automatically turned off by turning the air distribution control C to position » Fig. 81 *on page 82* or » Fig. 82 *on page 82*.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

To **switch on** press the Symbol key . The symbol (pos. 7 » Fig. 83 *on page 83*) appears in the display.

To **switch off** press the symbol key again. The symbol in the display goes out.

WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

If recirculated air mode is switched on for around 15 minutes, the symbol will begin to flash in the Climatronic display as a sign that the recirculated air mode is switched on long-term. If the recirculated air mode is not switched off, the symbol flashes for around 5 minutes.

Heating

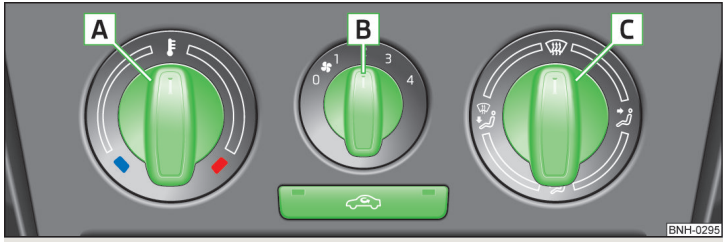

Fig. 81 **Heating Controls**

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 81

A Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blowers off, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 81
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow over the windows and into the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 81

Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

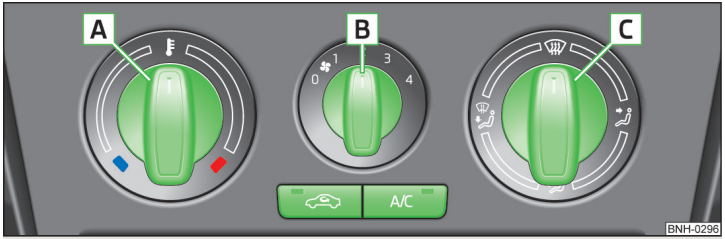

Fig. 82 **Controls of the air conditioning**

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 82

A Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blowers off, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 81
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow over the windows and into the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 81

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Note

▪ The warning light in the button **A/C** lights up after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. By lighting up of the warning light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

▪ During operation of the air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

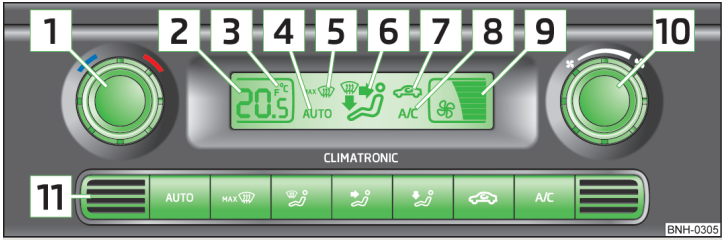

Fig. 83 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually afterwards.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When switched on the display shows the corresponding icon.

Functions of the various controls and display » Fig. 83

1 Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

2 Selected temperature

3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit

4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system

5 Intensive windshield defroster switched on

6 Direction of air flow

7 Recirculated air mode activated

8 Cooling system activated

9 Set blower speed

10 Set the temperature (turn to the left: Reduce fan speed, turn to the right: Increase blower speed)

11 Interior temperature sensor

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

MAX Switching the intensive windshield defroster on/off (when this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button)

Air flow to the windows

Air flow to the upper body

Air flow in the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 81

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature

The set temperature value appears in the display (pos. 2 » Fig. 83).

To **switch between degrees Celsius and degrees Fahrenheit,** the keys **AUTO** and **A/C** are to be pressed and held simultaneously.

The information appears in the display in the desired temperature measuring unit (pos. 3 » Fig. 83).

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If you select the temperature below +18 °C, "LO" appears in the display.

If you select a temperature higher than +29 °C, "HI" appears in the display.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

Controlling blower
The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower level can be manually adjusted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The blower speed set is indicated by displaying the corresponding number of segments (Pos. 9 » Fig. 83) in the display.

Automatic mode
The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

To **switch on** press the button **AUTO**. The display shows **AUTO** (pos. 4 » Fig. 83).

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

WARNING
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Note
- Do not stick anything on or cover the interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 83; it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic system.
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.
- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.

Efficient handling of the cooling system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment
Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved » page 100.

malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.
› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 159.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 27.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Communication and multimedia

Universal telephone installation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Introductory information 85
Phone Phonebook 86
Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel 86
Symbols in the display 87
Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system 87
Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display 88

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The reasons for this are as follows:
› no external aerial;
› external aerial incorrectly installed;
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.
- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in any area where it can become a projectile during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision — risk of injury.
- The Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist company before the vehicle can be transported by air.

Note

- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II. You can ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your telephone is compatible with the GSM II universal telephone fitting.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Introductory information

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II (hands-free system) includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the radio or navigation system.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.
› Phone Phonebook » page 86.
› Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 86.
› Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 88.
› Voice control of the telephone » page 89.
› Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 91.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology.

Phone Phonebook

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the first connection of the telephone, the system begins to load the phone book from the phone and the SIM card into the memory of the control unit.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this time the phone book, which was stored after the last update was completed, is available. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

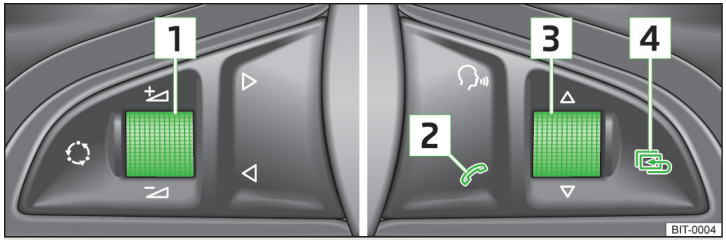

Fig. 84 **Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone**

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

To minimize driver distraction when operating the telephone, the basic telephone's functions can be set by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel » Fig. 84.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone installation at the factory.

The buttons control the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button / wheel » Fig. 84	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	MUTE 🔇)
1	Turn upwards	Increase the volume
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume

Button / wheel » Fig. 84	Action	Operation
2	Press briefly	Accept a call/end a call Display of the basic Phone menu → [a] Main Phone menu → List of dialled numbers → Call selected contact
2	Press and hold button	Reject the incoming call
3	Turn up/down	Previous / next menu item
3	Press briefly	Confirm selected menu item
3	Press and hold button	Continuously display first letter of the phone book
3	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
3	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
4	Press and hold button	Exit telephone menu

[a] The symbol The → symbol means briefly press button again.

Symbols in the display

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

The following symbols are displayed in the Maxi DOT display:

Symbol	Meaning
	Charge status of the telephone battery[a]
	Signal strength[a]
	a phone is connected to the hands-free system.
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices.
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system.

[a] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for pairing[1].

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[2].

[1] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.
[2] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.

› If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[1] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[2].
› To finish pairing in the MAXI DOT display, confirm the creation of the new user profile.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system
If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be re-established for 3 minutes in one of the following ways.
› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› In the MAXI DOT display under menu item **Bluetooth** - **Visibility**.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone
After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[2]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
The connection to a connected mobile phone can be ended in the following ways.
› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting from the user in the MAXI DOT display under the menu item **Bluetooth** - **User**.

Solving connection problems
If the hands-free system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.
› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.
› **Phone book**
› **Dial number**[3]
› **Call register**
› **Voice mailbox**
› **Bluetooth**[3]
› **Settings**[4]
› **Back**

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card. ▸

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.
[2] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a PIN number. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.
[3] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.
[4] This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+**, **✱**, **,** **#** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

Call register
The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed calls**
- **Dialled numbers**
- **Received calls**

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox[1] and then dial the number.

Bluetooth
The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Find** - Device search
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings
The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update** - Update the phone book[1]
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back
Return in the Start menu of the telephone.

[1] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.*

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue 89
Voice commands 90

Dialogue

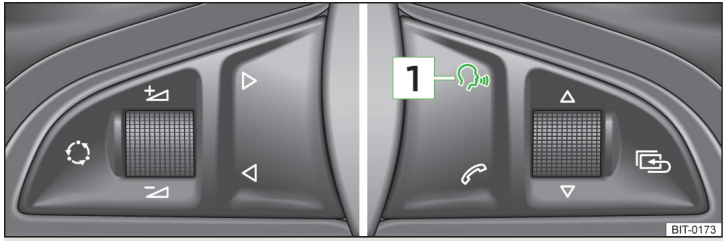

Fig. 85 **Multifunction steering wheel: Voice control**

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called "dialogue". The system gives audible feedback and guides you through the relevant functions if necessary.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.
- › Speak at a normal volume without intonation or excessive pauses.
- › Avoid poor pronunciation.
- › Close the doors, windows and sliding roof in order to reduce or eliminate disturbing noise from outside.
- › It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
- › During the dialogue, limit background noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
- › Do not speak when the system is making an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is housed in the moulded headliner and directed towards the driver and front passenger. Therefore, the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number
The telephone number can be entered as a continuous sequence of numbers spoken one after the other (the whole number at once) or in the form of digit blocks (separated by short pauses). After each string of digits (separated by a brief pause in speaking), all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0-9** and symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system does not recognize any combination of connected numbers, e.g. "twenty-three".

Switching on voice control
Briefly press the button 1 » Fig. 85 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching off voice control
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by briefly pressing button 1 » Fig. 85 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:
› with the **CANCEL** voice command;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 85 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note
- The dialogue is immediately terminated in the event of an incoming call.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control.

Voice commands

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL HISTORY	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC[a)]	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Sorry?**" and a new entry can be completed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd error the answer "**Cancelled**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact
If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice entry can also be saved using the voice control in the menu **FURTHER OPTIONS**.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth® 91
Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel 91
AUX and MDI inputs 92

Music playback via Bluetooth®

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from the devices such as MP3 player, mobile phone or notebook.

To ensure that music can be played via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » page 90, *Voice commands*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

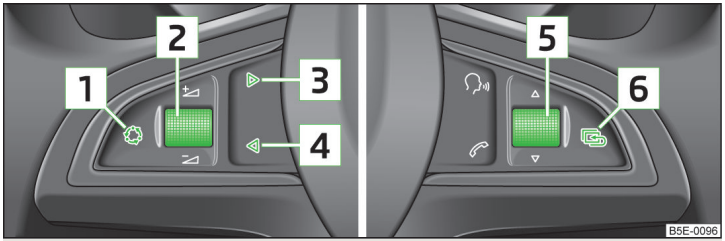

Fig. 86 **Multifunction steering wheel: Navigation control buttons**

The multifunction steering wheel features buttons for operating the basic functions for the factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 86.

The radio and the navigation system can of course still be operated via the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio, audio, video or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button / wheel » Fig. 86	Action	Radio	Audio sources	Navigation
1	Press	Change audio source		
2	Press	Switch tone off/on (MUTE)		Interrupt current navigation announcement
2	Turn upwards	Increase the volume		
2	Turn downwards	Decrease volume		
3	Press briefly	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	No function
		Interrupt traffic report		
3	Press and hold button	without function	Fast forward	without function
4	Press briefly	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track[a)]	No function
		Interrupt traffic report		
4	Press and hold button	without function	Fast rewind	without function

Button / wheel » Fig. 86	Action	Radio	Audio sources	Navigation
5	Turn upwards	Switch to the previous station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Skip to next track	Show the option to stop navigation or display the list of recent destinations
5	Turn downwards	Switch to the next station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Switch to start of track[a)]	
6	Press briefly	Call up the main menu		

a) To go to the previous track, press the adjustment wheel twice or rotate it by two positions.

AUX and MDI inputs

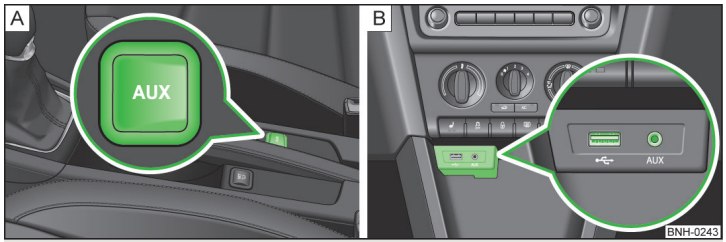

Fig. 87 **AUX input/MDI input**

Depending on the equipment, your vehicle may have AUX or MDI inputs (AUX and USB) for connecting external audio sources.

The connected external audio sources (e.g. iPod or MP3 player) can then be used for audio playback on your factory installed radio or radio-navigation system.

Extension cables to connect external sources are available from ŠKODA original accessories.

For a description of use, refer to the operating instructions for the relevant radio or navigation system.

AUX input

The AUX input is located in one of the following places:

› Between the front seats in the centre console » Fig. 87 - A;
› On the front of the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Multi-Device Interface (MDI) input

If vehicles are equipped with the MDI input, this will be located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 87 - B.

External sources such as iPod®, iPad® or iPhone® connected to the MDI input can be operated via your unit.

When the ignition is on and a device is connected via a connecting cable, the device battery is charged.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and turning off the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer 93
Lock/unlock steering lock 93
Switch on the ignition and start the engine 94
Switching off the engine 94

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » page 94, *Switch on the ignition and start the engine*.
- With the ignition off, the steering may lock » page 93 - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 96, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 153.

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

The electronic immobilizer makes a possible attempted theft or unauthorized use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Immobilizer active.
IMMOBILIZER

Lock/unlock steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Withdraw the ignition key.
› Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking

› Insert the key into the ignition lock.
› Switch on the ignition » page 94.

The vehicle is unlocked.

If the ignition switch cannot be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

Switch on the ignition and start the engine

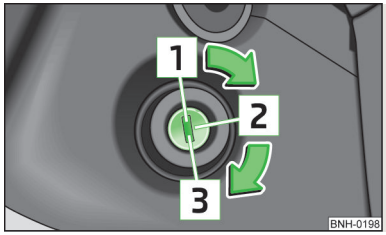

Fig. 88
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 88

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after switching on the ignition lights, the glow plug warning lights up. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
› Switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 88.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission,** depress the brake pedal and hold it until the engine has started.
› Turn the key into position 3 to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started – do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with the START-STOP system and manual gearbox
The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress clutch to start!**
S **CLUTCH**

Vehicles with the START-STOP system and automatic gearbox
The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress brake to start.**
S **BRAKE**

Note

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

› Stop the vehicle » page 96, *Parking*.
› Turn the light switch to position 1 » Fig. 88 *on page 94*.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

! CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking 95
Handbrake 96
Parking 96

WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be actuated when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 100, *New brake pads*.

CAUTION

Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between service intervals.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Long or steep slopes

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 31, *Brake system*.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake

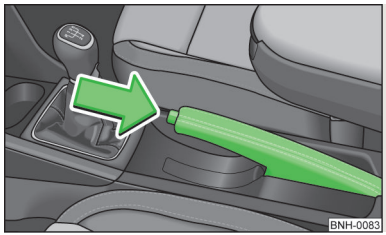

Fig. 89
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

The hand brake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 89 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following instruction is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 95 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » ! .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select first gear or reverse gear.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 97
Pedals 97

Manual gear changing

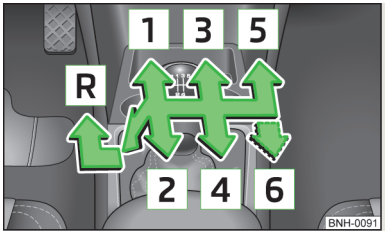

Fig. 90
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

On the shift lever, the individual gear positions are shown » Fig. 90.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 38.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear to the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into **R** position » Fig. 90.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation!

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever 98
Selector lever lock 98
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) 99
Starting-off and driving 99

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- No throttle when it is set before starting the mode for moving forward with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- When the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, the vehicle must be held in mode **D**, **S** or **R** with the brake pedal. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle crawls.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to put in the **P** mode. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

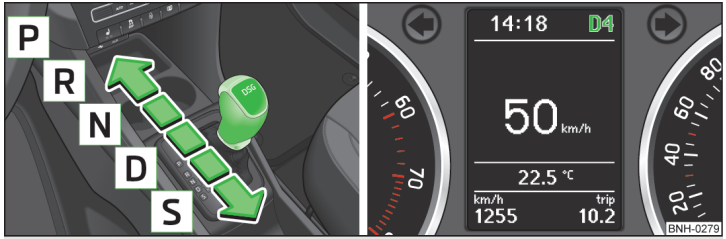

Fig. 91 **Selector lever/display**

Fig. 92
Shiftlock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 97 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 91.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 91.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

Parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R – Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N – Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)
In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)
In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down **at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92.

Fault in the automatic gearbox
A fault in the automatic gearbox is noticeable with the following.
› Only certain gears are selected.
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
› Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

CAUTION

If a fault occurs on the automatic gearbox help from a professional service provider should be sought immediately - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

Selector lever lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 97 first.

The selector lever is locked in modes **P** and **N** to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)

› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of arrow » Fig. 92 *on page 98*.

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D**.

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be emergency released » page 158.

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being accidentally selected.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

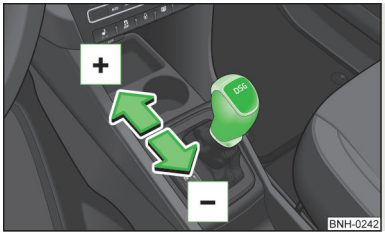

Fig. 93
Selector lever

Read and observe ! and ! on page 97 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 91 *on page 98*.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 38.

Switching to manual shifting

› Push the gear selector from mode **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears

› Push the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 93.

Shifting down gears

› Push the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 93 .

Note

- It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear on the brakes » page 95, *Information on braking*.
- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
- If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 97 first.

Starting off

› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of to arrow » Fig. 92 *on page 98* and hold.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 98 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)

› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of vehicle control – risk of accident!

Driving in an economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving in ____ 100
tips for economical driving ____ 100

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Driving in

Driving in the engine
The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1,000 km we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and to dispense with the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres
New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Therefore, drive with special care for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads
New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Therefore, drive with special care for the first 200 km or so.

tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Switch in an energy saving and timely manner
Observe the recommended gear » page 38.

Avoid full throttle and high speeds
Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling
When the engine is switched off, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine re-start.

Avoid short distances
When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained
Further information » page 139.

Avoid unnecessary ballast
Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 1 l/100 km. At a speed of 100-120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity
Electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating, air conditioning and the like) only turn on for as long as necessary.

Driving through water and driving off of made-up roads

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving through water 101
Driving off paved roads 101

WARNING

Immediately after driving through water, mud, slush and the like, braking effectiveness will be temporarily impaired » page 95, *Information on braking* . For this reason, sudden and violent braking manoeuvres are to be avoided - there is a risk of accident!

Driving through water

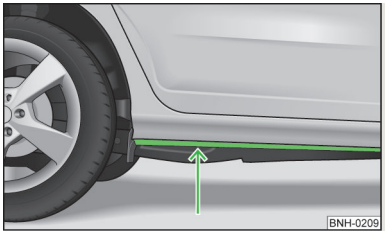

Fig. 94
Driving through water

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 94.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air induction system or other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Driving off paved roads

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 168, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

WARNING

Drive particularly aware and pro-actively outside paved roads.
- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Objects trapped under the floor of the vehicle can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, the seals and other parts of the chassis. Check the underside of the vehicle and remove the trapped objects.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the chassis and its components can get damaged.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Assist systems

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 102
Antilock Braking System (ABS) 102
Traction Control System (TCS) 102
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 103
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 103
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 103

This chapter deals with the functions of the braking and stabilisation systems, with the error indicator referred to in chapter » page 30, *Indicator lights*.

The braking and stabilisation systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Fig. 95
Press the ESC system: Activating/deactivating TCS

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. oversteer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The » Fig. 95 button can only be used to deactivate the TCS » page 102.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 102.

Note

For vehicles without stabilization control (ESC), during a TCS intervention the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 104
Activation/deactivation 104

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to only as a system) draws attention via acoustic signals and an indication in the radio or navigation display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people not to be recognised by the system.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- The system function may be limited under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.).
- Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.

Function

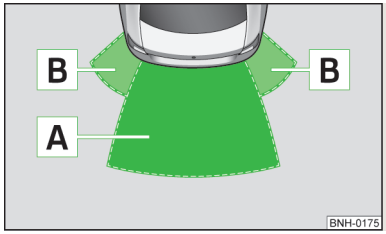

Fig. 96
Range of sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Approximate range of sensors

Area » Fig. 96	Distance behind the vehicle (in cm)
A	160
B	60

Acoustic signals and display
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue reversing!**

Description of the indications in the radio or navigation system display, » *the radio instruction manual, navigation system user guide.*

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The system is activated automatically by engaging the **reverse gear**. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The system is deactivated by disengaging reverse gear.

Displaying an error
If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the system cannot be activated when towing a trailer.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning 104
Operating Description 105

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The state where the GRA maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING
- The GRA only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Functioning

Read and observe ! on page 104 first.

Basic requirements for start of control
- ✓ The GRA is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in the **D**, **S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed must be higher than 20 km/hr.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, steering must be taken over!

Operating Description

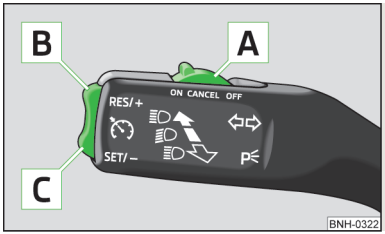

Fig. 97
Operating lever: Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 104 first.

Overview of the control elements of the GRA » Fig. 97

A	OFF	Deactivate GRA (delete stored speed)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	ON	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
B	RES/+	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	SET/–	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed stored, the current speed is adopted.

After starting the system, the current speed is stored and the instrument cluster lights up the indicator light on.

After the interruption in control, the stored speed can be resumed by pressing the B button.

Automatic control interruption

Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

› By pressing the brake or clutch pedal.
› When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
› Through an airbag deployment.

WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating conditions of the system 106
Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox 106
Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox 106
System related automatic start-up 107
Manually deactivating/activating the system 107
Information messages 107

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) saves fuel and reduces polluting emissions and CO_2 emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

WARNING

- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions of the system

Fig. 98
Maxi DOT display: Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

For system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to work, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function correctly cannot be influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

If after stopping the car, the message **START-STOP NOT POSSIBLE** appears in the segment display or the ⊘ » Fig. 98 check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential for the following reasons, for example.

› The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
› The current consumption is too high.
› High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

Note

▪ If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
▪ After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown

› Stop the vehicle.
› Put the gear stick into Neutral.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START-STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display Ⓐ » Fig. 98 *on page 106*.

Automatic engine start

› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START-STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display Ⓐ » Fig. 98 *on page 106*.

Automatic engine start
› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Further information on automatic transmission
The automatic engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D**, **S** and **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the engine remains shut down even after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position then the automatic starts the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D, S** or **N,** the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km / h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System related automatic start-up

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. Some possible reasons for this are:
› The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
› The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
› The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Fig. 99
Button for the START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

Deactivating/activating
› Press the symbol button Ⓐ OFF » Fig. 99.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Start engine manually!**
S **START MANUALLY**

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

M **Error: Start-Stop**
S **ERROR START-STOP**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 108
Adjusting the ready position 109
Fitting the ball head 109
Check proper fitting 110
Removing the ball head 111
Use and care 111

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal regulations for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **50 kg**.

WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- Do not use the tow bar if it is not correctly inserted and secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing device if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Never release the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

Take care when handling the tow bar so as to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Note

The towing vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 156.

Description

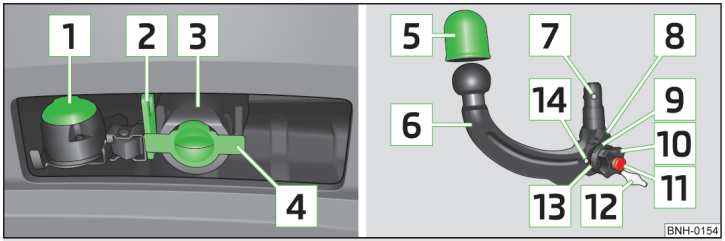

Fig. 100 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

The tow bar can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel compartment or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » page 146.

Support for the towing device/tow bar » Fig. 100

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eyelet
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Tow ball
7 Locking ball
8 Centering
9 Green marking on the handwheel
10 Handwheel
11 Key
12 Lock cap
13 Red marking on the handwheel
14 White marking on ball bar

Note

On the bottom of the key is a code number. If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to use this code number to provide you with a new one.

Adjusting the ready position

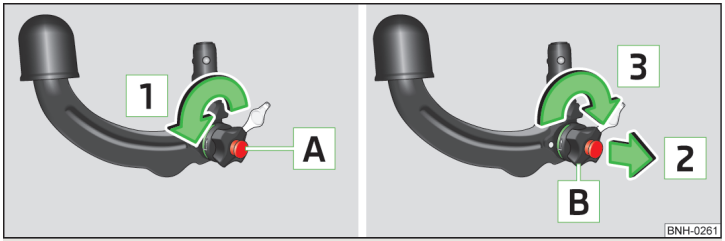

Fig. 101 **Setting the ready position**

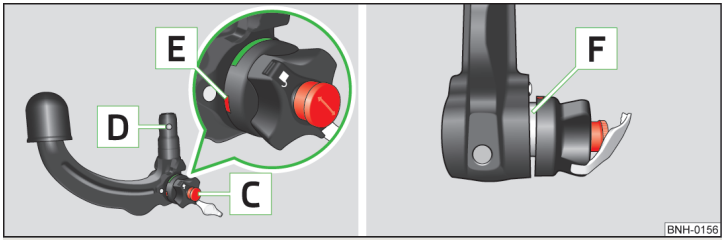

Fig. 102 **Ready position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

Always adjust the ball head in the ready position before fitting.

› Turn the key A in direction of the arrow 1 to the stop » Fig. 101.
› Pull the handwheel B in the direction of the arrow 2 and drag in the direction of the arrow 3 to the stop.

The handwheel remains locked in this position.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 102

✓ The key C is in the unlocked position - the arrow on the key points to the "padlock open" icon . The key cannot be removed.
✓ The locking balls D can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
✓ The red marking E on the handwheel points to the white marking on the ball bar.
✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 4 mm F between the handwheel and the tow bar.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

! WARNING

If the tow bar cannot be correctly placed in the ready position, then it must not be used.

! CAUTION

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the handwheel lock.

Fitting the ball head

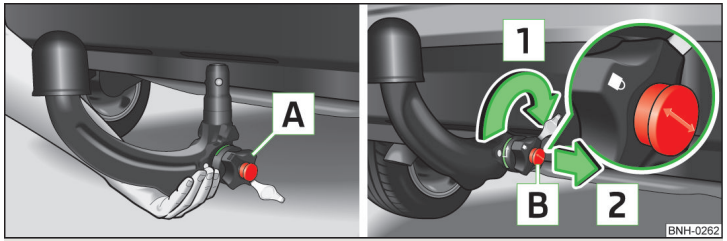

Fig. 103 **Insert the ball bar/lock the lock and remove the key**

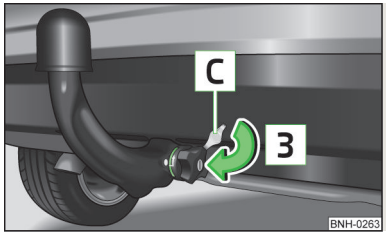

Fig. 104
Fit the lock cap

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 100 *on page 108* in a downwards direction.
› Put the tow bar in the ready position » page 109.
› Grip the tow bar from underneath » Fig. 103 and insert into the mounting recess until it audibly clicks into place » !.

The handwheel A rotates back **automatically** and rests on the ball rod » !.

› Lock the handwheel lock by turning the key B right as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow 1 - the arrow on the key points towards the "closed padlock" icon.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fit the cap C on the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 104.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 110.

! WARNING

- Do not hold the handwheel with your hand when attaching the ball bar - there is a risk of finger injury.
- After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key.
- The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.
- If the tow bar is not in the ready position, it cannot be fitted in the mounting recess.

! CAUTION

After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the handwheel lock – risk of lock getting dirty.

i Note

Store the cover of the mounting recess in a suitable place in the luggage compartment store after removal.

Check proper fitting

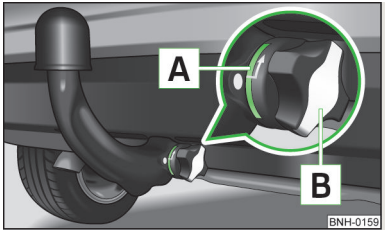

Fig. 105
Duly fortified ball head

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Duly fortified ball head » Fig. 105

✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
✓ The green marking A on the handwheel points to the white marking on the tow bar.
✓ The handwheel lies flush with the tow bar - there is no gap.
✓ The handwheel is locked and the key is removed.
✓ The cap B is on the handwheel.

! WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the tow bar has been properly locked!

Removing the ball head

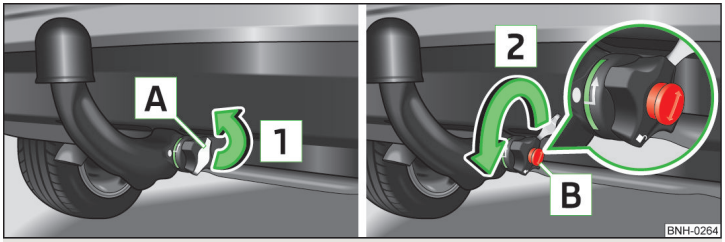

Fig. 106 **Removing the lock cover/releasing the lock**

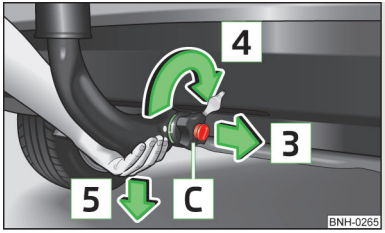

Fig. 107
Release ball bar

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

› Remover the cover A from the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 106.
› Insert the key B into the lock.
› Unlock the handwheel lock by turning the key B left as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow 2 - the arrow on the key points towards the "padlock open" icon.
› Grip the tow bar from below » Fig. 107 and with the other hand pull the handwheel C in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Turn the handwheel in the direction of the arrow 4 to the stop, and hold in this position.
› Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow 5.

At the same time, the tow bar latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Attach the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 100 *on page 108*.

! WARNING

- Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage on sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk!
- Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

! CAUTION

- If the handwheel is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed, and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The tow bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- The mounting recess must be closed with the cover following removal. This prevents foreign bodies from getting into the mounting recess.

i Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

Always check the tow bar before hitching a trailer. Apply suitable grease where necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer 112
Driving with a trailer 112
Anti-theft alarm system 113

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 139, *Service life of tyres*.

Towing capacity and trailer weight

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 168, *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer - risk of accident and serious injuries!
- A sliding cargo can adversely affect stability and driving safety significantly - there is a risk of accident!

Driving with a trailer

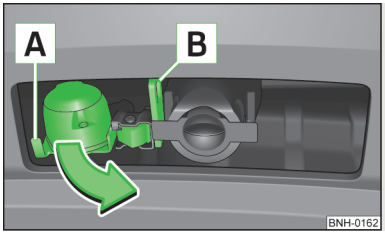

Fig. 108
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

Before the journey

› Grip the 13-pin socket on the handle A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 108.
› Lift off protective cap 5 » Fig. 100 *on page 108*.

After the journey

› Grip the 13-pin socket on the handle A and swing in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 108.
› Place the protective cover 5 » Fig. 100 *on page 108* onto the tow bar.

Safety eyelet
The purpose of the safety eyelet B » Fig. 108 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eyelet, it must **sag** freely against the vehicle in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse etc.).

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 54.

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light in the instrument cluster » page 32 starts to flash or lights up. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 133.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 32.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electrical installations can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting the power socket, check that the rear lights on the trailer are working correctly.

Note
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dash panel » page 160.
- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eyelet can result in mechanical wear on the surface protection of the eyelet. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eyelet and does not constitute a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.

Anti-theft alarm system

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 49.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.

✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Statutory checks 115
ŠKODA Service Partners 116
ŠKODA Original parts 116
ŠKODA Original accessories 116
Spoiler 117
Airbags 117
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 117

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO).

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 116 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

! WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand. ▸

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs
ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

! WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

! WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

! WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

! WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always [1] be returned free of charge.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand 118
Automatic car wash systems 118
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner 119

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

Read and observe ! and ! on page 118 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe ! and ! on page 118 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

CAUTION

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe and on page 118 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

Note

See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 120.

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle paint work 119
Plastic parts 120
Rubber seals 120
Chrome parts 120
Decorative films 120
Windows and external mirrors 121
Headlight glasses 121
Door closing cylinder 121
Cavity protection 121
Wheels 122
Under-body protection 122
Wiper blades 122

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

Read and observe and on page 119 first.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing
Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION
- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION
Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

CAUTION
- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products **whatsoever**.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION
Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner.
- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION
- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and external mirrors

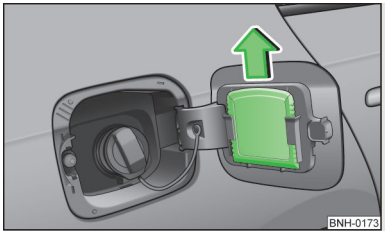

Fig. 109
Fuel filler flap: Ice scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Removing snow and ice
Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 109.

Cleaning windows
Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

! CAUTION
Instructions for removing snow and ice
- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.

! CAUTION
Information for cleaning windows
- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

! CAUTION
- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Door closing cylinder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

! CAUTION
Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels

Read and observe and on page 119 first.

Wheel rims
Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Under-body protection

Read and observe and on page 119 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Wiper blades

Read and observe and on page 119 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example » page 118.

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather 123
Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara® 124
Seat covers 124
Safety belts 124

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe and on page 123 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature embrittlement of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » .

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

Read and observe ! and ! on page 123 first.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

! CAUTION

- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe ! and ! on page 123 first.

Electrically heated seats
Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers. » !.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

! CAUTION

- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Safety belts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 123 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

! WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling 125
Lead-free petrol 126
Diesel fuel 127

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 110 *on page 125*.

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

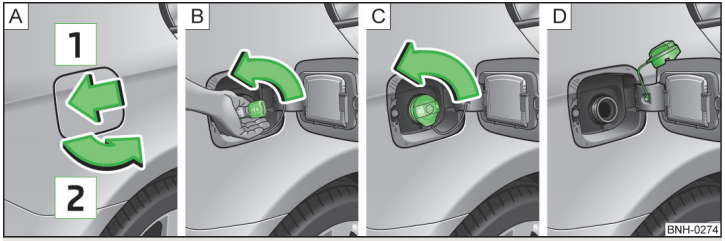

Fig. 110 **Tank closure**

Read and observe ! on page 125 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 110.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the filler cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 110 - C.
› Place the filler cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 110 - D.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go » !.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages » Fig. 110 - C.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

WARNING

- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- Fuel vapours are explosive - it can be fatal!
- Observe the local regulations regarding fuel handling.

WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister

- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **55 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Lead-free petrol

Read and observe ! on page 125 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** that meets the **EN 228**[1] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bio-ethanol **(E10)**.

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

If unleaded gasoline is not available with the octane number **95** RON, in an emergency petrol with the octane rating of **91, 92** and **93** RON can be used to fill the tank, but this leads to a slight loss of performance and a slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

In case of an emergency, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available » !.

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!

CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

CAUTION

In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

CAUTION

Do not use fuels with metal components, such as **LRP** (lead replacement petrol) may be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! on page 125 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[1] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[2].

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Diesel fuel additives

The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with bio fuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 128
Engine compartment overview 129
Radiator fan 129
Windscreen washer system 130

WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

[1] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.
[2] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment
- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING
- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note
- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

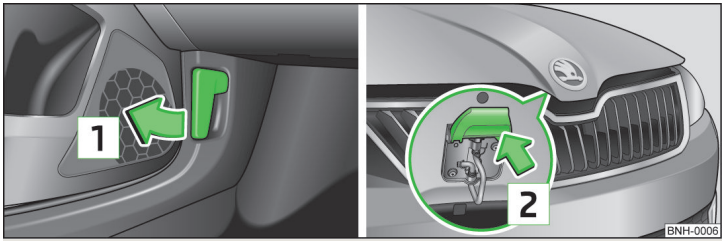

Fig. 111 **Bonnet release lever/release lever**

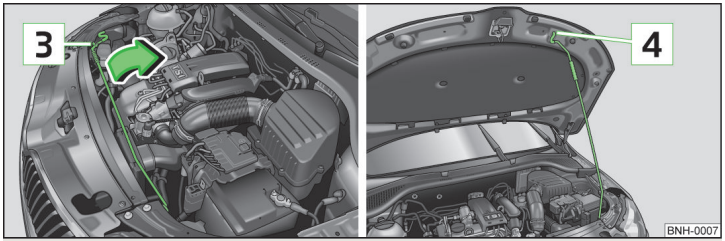

Fig. 112 **Securing the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

Open flap

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 111.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the flap is unlocked.
› Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.
› Take the bonnet support out of its holder 3 in the direction if the arrow » Fig. 112 and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support in the opening 4 designed for it.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**.

! WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 111.

Engine compartment overview

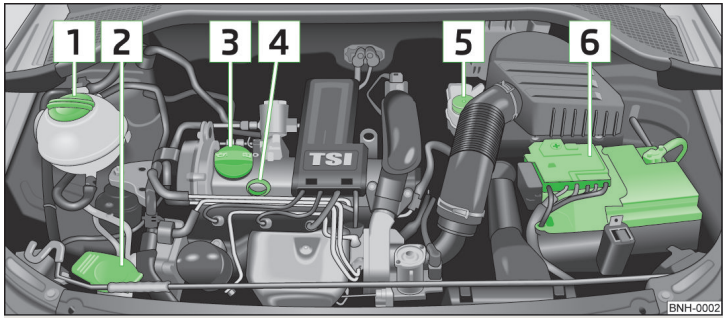

Fig. 113 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 113

1	Coolant expansion reservoir	133
2	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	130
3	Engine oil filler opening	132
4	Engine oil dipstick	131
5	Brake fluid reservoir	134
6	Vehicle battery	134

i Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

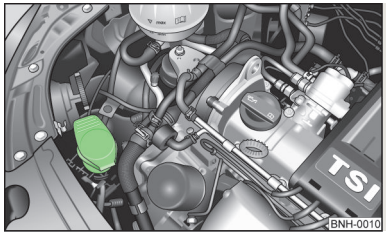

Fig. 114
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 114.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3.5 litres or about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification 131
Checking the oil level 131
Replenishing 132

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 43.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 127.

[1] In some countries, 5.4 l. applies for both variants.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 130 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/55 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	VW 503 00, VW 504 00

Diesel engine[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/55 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	VW 501 01, VW 502 00
1.6 l/77 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 can be used once for refilling.

Diesel engine[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 can be used once for refilling.

CAUTION

Only the above-mentioned oils can be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals. We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, a maximum of 0.5 l of specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) engine oil can be used to refill once. Other engine oils must not be used - risk of engine damage!

Checking the oil level

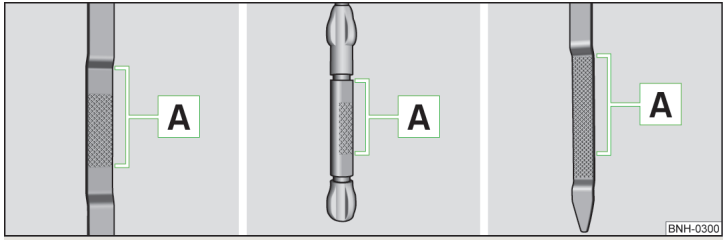

Fig. 115 **Principle sketch: Dipstick**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 130 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 115

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.

› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the display of the instrument cluster shows a check mark and the corresponding message » page 31. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the A range » Fig. 115 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system!
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above level A » Fig. 115, do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 130 first.

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 113 *on page 129*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 131.
› Check the oil level » page 131.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
› Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the coolant level 133
Replenishing 133

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive content in the coolant must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 116 *on page 133*.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 127.
- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

▪ Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
▪ Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 116 *on page 133*.
▪ If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
▪ Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
▪ Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking the coolant level

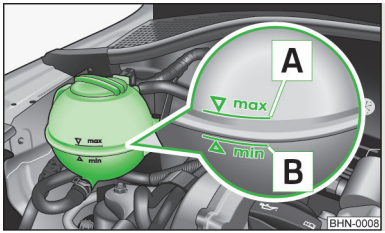

Fig. 116
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe and on page 132 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 116

A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level
B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The engine is not heated.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level
› Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 116.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark A » Fig. 116.

In case of low coolant level, in the instrument cluster a check mark is shown and the corresponding message » page 32. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 132 first.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

CAUTION
▪ Only top up with new coolant.
▪ Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level 134
Specification 134

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 117 *on page 134*.

WARNING
▪ The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 127.
▪ Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 117 *on page 134*, do not continue driving - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level

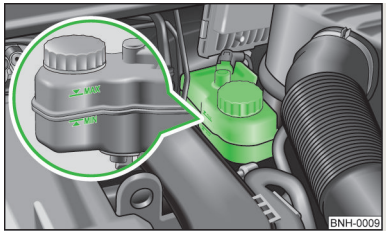

Fig. 117
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 117.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » page 31, *Brake system*.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening the cover 135
Checking the battery electrolyte level 136
Charging 136
Replacing 137
Disconnecting and reconnecting 137
Automatic load deactivation 137

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the general applicable safety rules as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal.
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

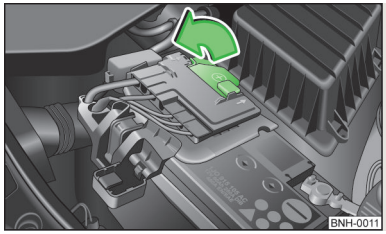

Fig. 118
Engine compartment: Battery cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 118.

› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 118.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

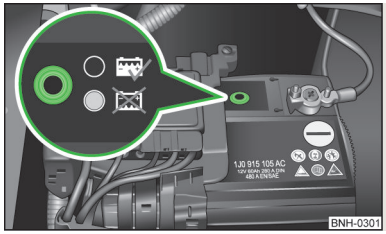

Fig. 119
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator » Fig. 119, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour of this display.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note
▪ The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
▪ For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ All consumers are turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents
› Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages
It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal (-).
- "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
- We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 154, *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

Replacing

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

Disconnecting

› Switch off the ignition.

› First, disconnect the negative terminal (-) first, then the positive (+) terminal of the battery.

Connecting

› First, connect the positive (+) first, then the negative (-) battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Radio or navigation system	Enter code number» *User radio manual* or » *navigation system user manual*
Time settings	» page 29

CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.

Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.

› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

▪ Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
▪ Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres 139
New tyres 140
Unidirectional tyres 141

WARNING

The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.

WARNING

Instructions for the use of tyres
▪ For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
▪ Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on all four wheels.
▪ For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
▪ Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
▪ Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.
▪ An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
▪ Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
▪ Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle.

WARNING

Information regarding tyre damage or wear
▪ Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
▪ Never drive with damaged tyres.
▪ Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

WARNING (Continued)

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

CAUTION

- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost valve caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

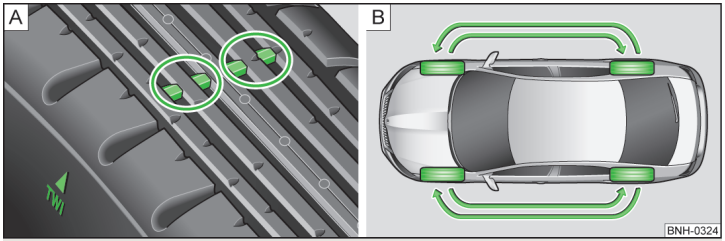

Fig. 120 **Principle sketch: Replace tire tread with wear indicators / wheels**

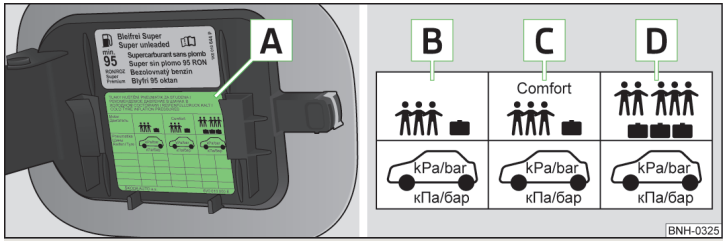

Fig. 121 **Open the fuel filler flap with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressures / inflate tyres**

Read and observe and on page 138 first.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances.

Sticker with prescribed tyre inflation pressure values » Fig. 121

A Position of the CNG label
B Standard filling for half load
C Comfort inflation pressure for half load[1)]
D Standard filling pressure for a full load

Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The sticker with prescribed tyre inflation filling values is located on the inside of the tank flap A » Fig. 121 .

In some vehicles, the tyre pressure can be adjusted to the comfort inflation pressure value » Fig. 121 C and thus greater driving comfort is achieved.

With comfort inflation pressure, the fuel consumption can rise slightly.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

1) Valid for some vehicles.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres.

Tyre damage
Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Replacing wheels
If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend swapping the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 120 - B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to ensure optimal service life for the tyres.

Storing tyres
Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre, depending on the make » Fig. 120 - A. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using summer or winter tyres older than 6 or 4 years old respectively.

New tyres

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible, replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings
195/55 R 15 85 H

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 121 *on page 139*
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 121 *on page 139*
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial » Fig. 121 *on page 139*
15	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 121 *on page 139*
85	Load index » !
H	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**). e.g.

DOT 11 14...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	83	84	85	86	87	91	92	93	95
Load (In kg)	487	500	515	530	545	615	630	650	690

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed icon	R	S	T	U	H	V	W
Maximum speed (in km/h)	170	180	190	200	210	240	270

CAUTION
The information about the load index and the speed symbol is listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe and on page 138 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:
› Increased driving stability.
› Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
› Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Tyre control display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting 142
Display 142

Monitors the tyre pressure display and warns of a change in tyre pressure.

The system must be calibrated if one of the following is evident:
› Change of tyre inflation pressure.
› Change one or more wheels.
› Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
› The warning light while driving.

WARNING
Information on tyre pressure
- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.

CAUTION
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10,000 km or once a year.
- The tyre pressure monitor does not replace the need to check tyre pressure regularly.

Setting

Fig. 122
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 139.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the symbol button ⓘ » Fig. 122 for longer than 2 seconds.

If the warning light ⓘ in the instrument cluster lights up and does not go out after the system configuration, this indicates a system fault.

If the warning light ⓘ in the instrument cluster flashes, there is a system fault.

Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The warning light ⓘ in the instrument cluster lights up when any of the following conditions are met.
› The tyre inflation pressure is low.
› The structure of the tyre is damaged.
› The vehicle is loaded on one side.
› The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
› Snow chains are mounted.
› The spare wheel is mounted.
› One wheel per axle was changed.

WARNING

▪ When the warning light ⓘ in the instrument cluster lights up, immediately reduce speed and avoid violent steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
▪ Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light ⓘ in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Reserve and temporary spare wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Change 143
Spare wheel 143

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

WARNING

▪ If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.
▪ If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.

Change

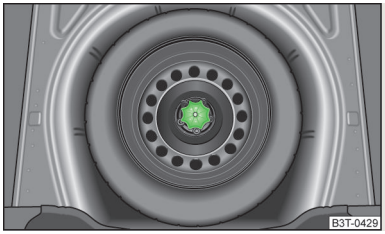

Fig. 123
Fixing the spare or temporary spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

The spare or temporary spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 123.

Take out the wheel
› Open the boot lid.
› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the nut » Fig. 123 anticlockwise.
› Take out the wheel.

Stow the wheel
› Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Screw on the nut » Fig. 123 clockwise until the wheel is safely secured.
› Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Close the boot lid.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 142 first.

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.
› The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » Fig. 120 *on page 139*.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

! WARNING
- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the temporary spare wheel when absolutely necessary.
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres 143
Snow chains 144

Winter tyres

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of vehicles fitted with **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

In order to achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Winter tyres** » page 42.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
5J x 14[a)]	35 mm	175/70
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	185/60
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	195/55

[a)] Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **9 mm**.
[b)] Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **13 mm**.

WARNING

The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

CAUTION

Remove the **full wheel trims** » page 148 before fitting the snow chains.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle ____ 145
reflective vest ____ 145
fire extinguisher ____ 146
Vehicle tool kit ____ 146

First aid kit and warning triangle

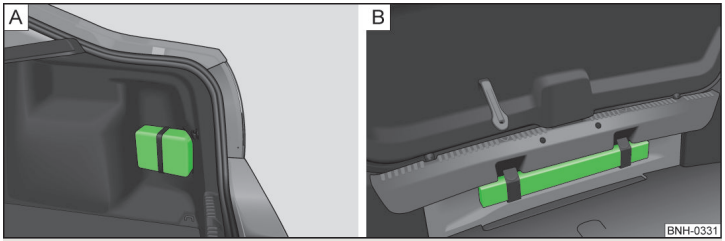

Fig. 124 **First-aid kit/warning triangle**

The first aid kit and warning triangle are located in the luggage compartment of the vehicle.

First-aid box
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 124 - A.

Warning triangle
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 124 - B.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

reflective vest

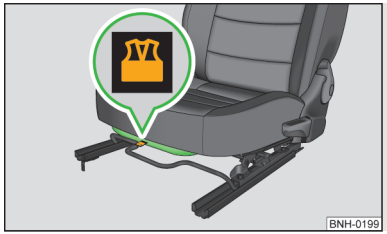

Fig. 125
Reflective vest

The reflective vest is located in a holder under the driver's seat » Fig. 125.

WARNING

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – otherwise it may fall out of the holder – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedal!

CAUTION

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – risk of damage to the holder.

fire extinguisher

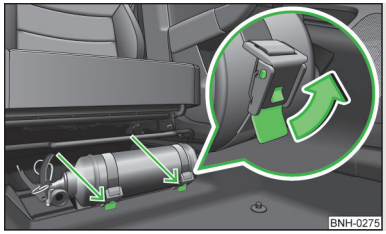

Fig. 126
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 126.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.

Follow these steps in the reverse order for attachment.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

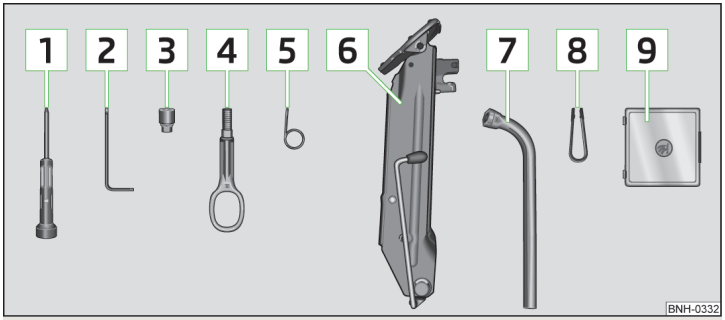

Fig. 127 **Vehicle tool kit**

The vehicle tool kit and the jack with sticker are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

Depending on the equipment, not all the components listed in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

Possible components of the on-board tool » Fig. 127

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Car jack
7 Wheel wrench
8 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
9 Replacement bulb set

Screw the car jack back into its initial position after use in order to store it back in the box with the vehicle tool kit. ▸

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preliminary work 147
Full wheel trim 148
Wheel bolts 148
Changing a wheel 148
Follow-up work 149
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts 149
Raise vehicle 149
Securing wheels against theft 150

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory-fitted ones » page 140, *New tyres*.

WARNING

Notes for vehicle lifting

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.

WARNING (Continued)

- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never apply grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary work

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

› Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine.

› Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 146 and the **spare wheel** » page 142 from the boot.

Full wheel trim

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Extracting
› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 146 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing
› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening » !.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

! CAUTION

▪ Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. The cover could be damaged.
▪ When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area.
▪ If **wheel trims** are fitted, it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system. We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

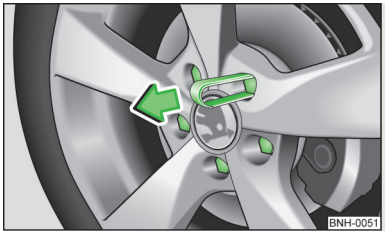

Fig. 128
Remove the cap

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Extracting
› Push the extraction pliers » page 146 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 128.

Installing
› Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Changing a wheel

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Alternately tighten wheel bolts opposite (diagonally) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

WARNING

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 141.

Follow-up work

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 142.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

- If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

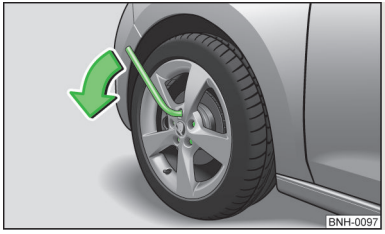

Fig. 129
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Release

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 129.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 129 until it is tight.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foodt**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raise vehicle

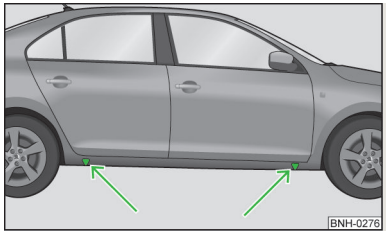

Fig. 130
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 150.

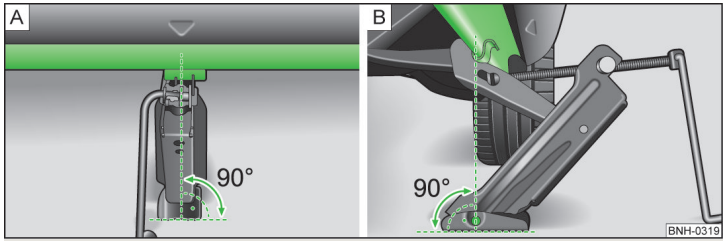

Fig. 131 **Attach lifting jack**

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Position the lifting jack below the jacking point closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 130.

The mounting points are located on the metal bar of the lower sill on the underside of your vehicle » Fig. 130.

› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 131 - A.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 131 - B.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

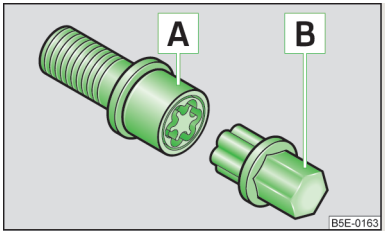

Fig. 132
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 146.

› Remove the cover from the anti-theft wheel bolt.
› Insert the adapter B » Fig. 132 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the anti-theft wheel bolt A until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 149.
› After removing the adapter, replace the cap on the anti-theft wheel bolt.
› Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

i Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Genuine Parts if required.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit ____ 151
Preparations for using the breakdown kit ____ 152
Sealing and inflating the tyre ____ 152
Check after 10 minutes' driving ____ 153

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.
› There is damage to the rim.
› The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
› The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
› There is damage to the tyre wall.
› Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
› If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING
- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.

WARNING
- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

WARNING (Continued)
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

For the sake of the environment
Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

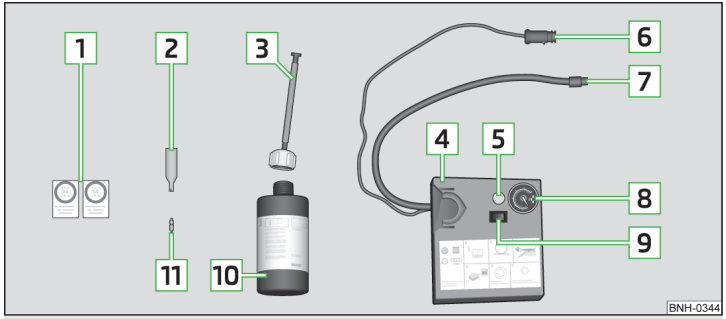

Fig. 133 **Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 151 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit » Fig. 133

1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2 Valve remover

3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 151 first.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).
- Switch off the engine.
- Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
- Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
- Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 151.
- Uncouple any trailers.
- Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
- Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 133 *on page 151* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
- Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 151 first.

Sealing

- Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 133 *on page 151* back and forth several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

- Screw the tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 133 *on page 151* of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector 6 into 12 Volt socket » page 71, *12-Volt power outlet*.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 153. ▸

WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- During inflation, the tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – there is a risk of fire.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

Read and observe ! on page 151 first.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› STOP **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle _____ 154
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system _____ 154

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion.
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 127.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit.
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – there is a risk of caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

CAUTION

- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

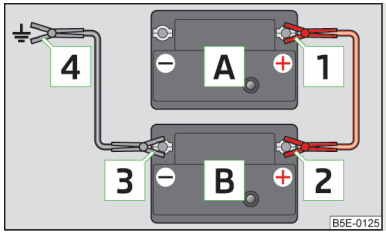

Fig. 134
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

Read and observe ! and ! on page 153 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.
- Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 134 .
- Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
- Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
- Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine
- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables
Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

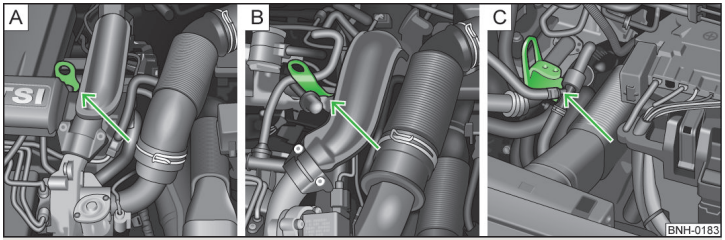

Fig. 135 **Engine earth: START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 153 first.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth.
- 1.2 l/63 kW TSI and 1.2 l/77 kW TSI engines » Fig. 135 - A
- 1.4 l./90 kW engine » Fig. 135 - B
- 1.6 l./77 kW TDI CR engine » Fig. 135 - C

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 155
Rear towing eye 156
Vehicles with a tow hitch 156

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 155 or » page 156 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 108.

! WARNING

- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.
- Do not use one-sided twisted tow rope, because the towing eye could become unscrewed on the vehicle under certain circumstances.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 153, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the drive wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

i Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye

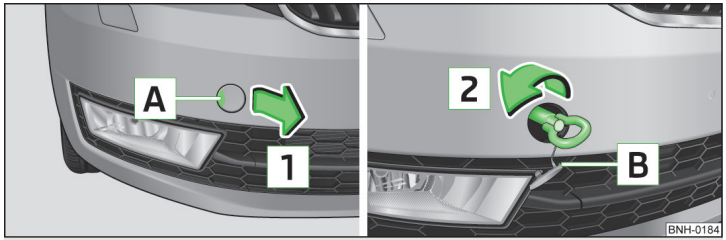

Fig. 136 **Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the area A » Fig. 136.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 1.
› After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye B, insert the cap in area A and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 136 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 2.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

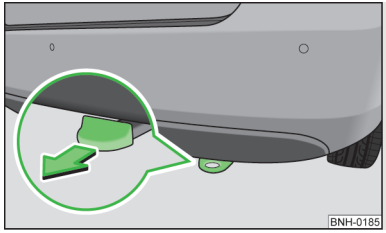

Fig. 137
Rear towing eye

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

The rear towing eye is located below the bumper on the right.

Remove the protective cap before using the towing eye. » Fig. 137. Replace the protective cap after using the towing eye.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the pre-installed detachable tow-bar may be used » page 108, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

i Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key ____ 157
Synchronising the remote control ____ 157

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

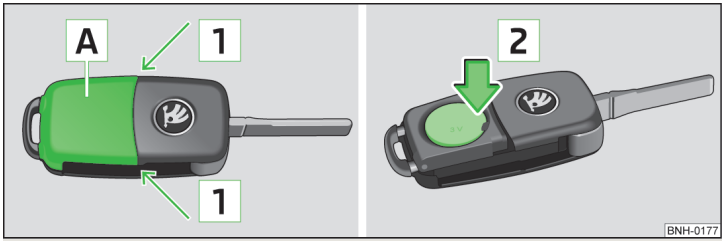

Fig. 138 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 156 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 138 with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Place the battery cover A on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

Note

▪ The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 157.
▪ If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 156 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking the door without a locking cylinder 157
Unlocking the tailgate 158
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 158

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

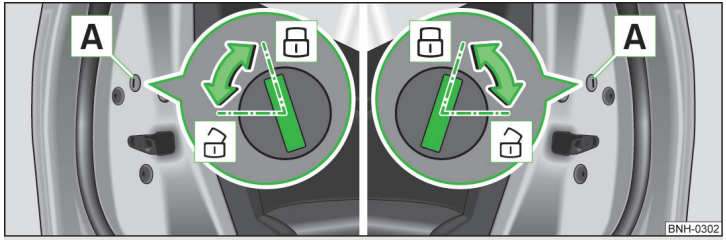

Fig. 139 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

Emergency locking » Fig. 139

A Cover
Door locked
Door unlocked

Before using the emergency closing mechanism, remove cover A » Fig. 139. After use, reinstall the cover into the corresponding hole in the door.

After closing the locked door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside.

Unlocking the tailgate

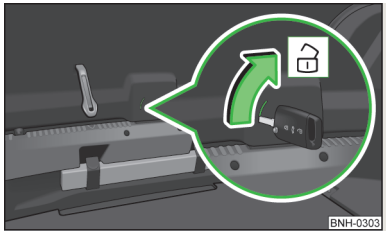

Fig. 140
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

The luggage compartment lid can be unlocked manually if there is a fault in the central locking system.

Unlocking

› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 67.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as it goes » Fig. 140.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

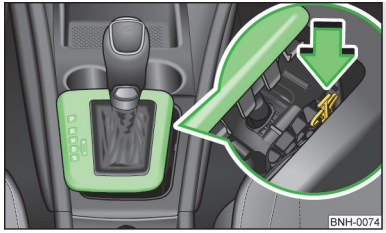

Fig. 141
Selector lever-emergency unlocking

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Carefully pull up the front left and right cover.
› Pull up rear cover.
› Press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 141 using your finger.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the front windscreen wiper blades 158
Replacing the rear window glass wiper blades 159

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the front windscreen wiper blades

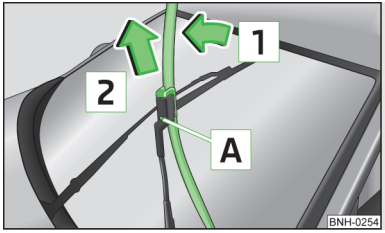

Fig. 142
Windscreen wiper blade

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› Place the operating lever in position 4 » Fig. 45 *on page 61*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 142.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the windscreen wiper arm at the top end.
› Press the locking button A and remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow 2.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » Fig. 45 *on page 61*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window glass wiper blades

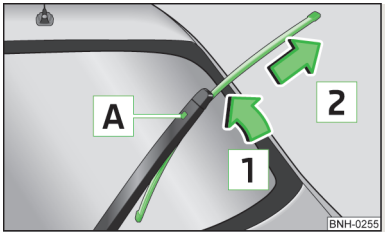

Fig. 143
Rear window wiper blade

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 143.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the windscreen wiper arm at the top end.
› Press the locking button A and remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow 2.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel 160
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel 160
Fuses in the engine compartment 161
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment 162

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 160, *Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel* or » page 162, *Fuse assignment in the engine compartment*.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warning notes before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 127, *Engine compartment*.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at other points in the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel

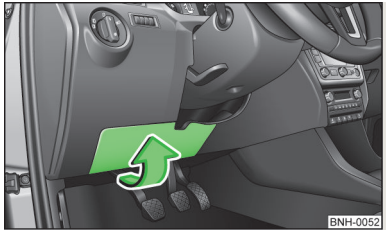

Fig. 144
Underside of the dash panel: Distribution board cover.

Read and observe and on page 159 first.

The fuses are located on the bottom of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 144 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
› Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Reinsert the cover into the dash panel in the opposite direction to the arrow such that the guide pins are guided into the dash panel openings.

Carefully push the cover in.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

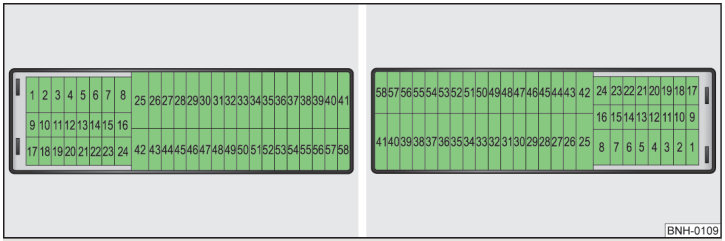

Fig. 145 **Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering/right-hand steering**

Read and observe and on page 159 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	S-contact
2	START - STOP
3	Instrument cluster, headlight range adjustment, telephone, oil level sensor, diagnostic port, dimmable interior rear-view mirror
4	Control unit for ABS/ESC, steering angle sensor strip with switches
5	Petrol engine: Speed regulating system
6	Reversing light (manual gearbox)
7	Ignition, engine control unit, automatic gearbox
8	Brake pedal switch, clutch switch, engine cooling fan
9	Operating controls for the heating, electronic control unit for air conditioning system, park distance control, window lift, engine cooling fan, heated washer nozzles
10	DC-DC converter
11	Mirror adjustment
12	Control unit for trailer detection
13	Electronic control unit for automatic gearbox, selector lever of the automatic gearbox
14	Lights and visibility
15	Not assigned

No.	Power consumer
16	Power steering, speed sensor, engine control unit, control unit for fuel pump
17	Daytime running lights/radio for vehicles with START-STOP
18	Mirror heater
19	Ignition lock input
20	Engine control unit, electronic control unit for fuel pump, fuel pump
21	Reversing lamp (automatic gearbox), fog lights with the function CORNER
22	Operating controls for the heating, electronic control unit for air conditioning system, telephone, instrument cluster, steering angle sender, multi-function steering wheel, ignition key removal lock, diagnostic port, rain sensor
23	Interior lighting, storage compartment and luggage compartment, side lights
24	Central control unit
25	Light switch
26	Rear window wiper
27	Steering wheel module
28	Petrol engine: Purge valve, PTC heater
29	Injection, coolant pump
30	Fuel pump, ignition system, cruise control
31	Lambda probe
32	High pressure fuel pump, pressure valve
33	Engine control unit
34	Engine control unit, vacuum pump
35	Switch illumination, number plate light, parking light
36	High beam, light switch
37	Rear fog light, DC-DC converter
38	Fog lights
39	Air blower for heating
40	Not assigned
41	Heated front seats
42	Rear window heater

No.	Power consumer
43	Horn
44	Windscreen wipers
45	Boot lid lock, central locking system
46	Alarm
47	Cigarette lighter
48	ABS
49	Turn signal lights, brake lights
50	DC-DC converter, radio
51	Electric windows (driver's window and rear left window)
52	Electric windows (front passenger's window and rear right)
53	Windscreen washer
54	START-STOP instrument cluster, steering wheel module, multi-function steering wheel
55	Control unit for automatic gearbox
56	Headlight cleaning system
57	Headlights front, rear
58	Headlights front, rear

Fuses in the engine compartment

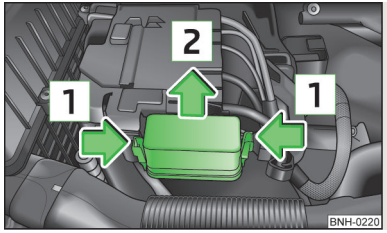

Fig. 146
Vehicle battery: Cover for the fuse box - variant 1

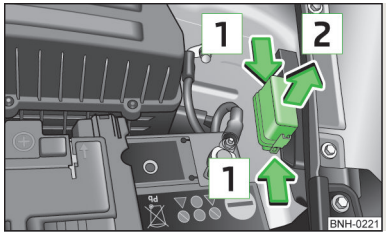

Fig. 147
Vehicle battery: Cover for the fuse box - variant 2

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

Replacing fuses

› Press the lock buttons on the cover together simultaneously in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 146 or » Fig. 147.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Place the cover on top of the fuse box.
› Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

The cover must engage firmly.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment

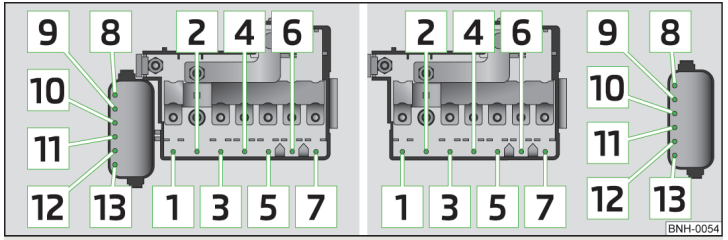

Fig. 148 **Fuses: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Generator
2	Not assigned (version 1), auxiliary electric heater (version 2)
3	Interior (version 1) » Fig. 148 Power supply for fuse block (version 2) » Fig. 148
4	Auxiliary electric heating (version 1) » Fig. 148 Interior (version 2) » Fig. 148
5	Interior
6	Engine cooling fan, control unit for preheating unit
7	Electrohydraulic power steering
8	ABS
9	Radiator fan
10	Automatic gearbox
11	ABS
12	Central control unit
13	Electrical auxiliary heating system

Note

Fuses 1-7 are replaced by a specialist garage.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights 163
Replacing the low beam bulb 163
Replacing bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light 164
Changing the front turn signal bulb 164
Replacing the bulb for the fog light 164
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light 165
Rear lamp 166
Replacing bulbs in rear light 166

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warning notes before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 127, *Engine compartment*.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- H7 and H15 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main, low or fog beam.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

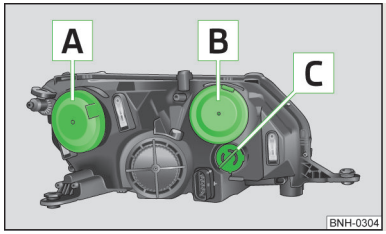

Fig. 149
Principle sketch: Headlights

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 149

A Low beam » page 163 or low beam with xenon gas discharge lamp
B Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light » page 164
C Turn signal light (at the front) » page 164

Replacing the low beam bulb

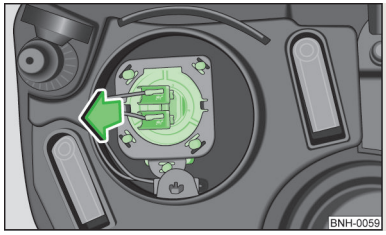

Fig. 150
Headlight with halogen bulb: Bulb for low beam

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

› Remove the protective cap A » Fig. 149 *on page 163*.
› Remove the connector with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 150.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the bulb fit in the recesses of the reflector.
› Attach the connector.
› Fit the protective cap A » Fig. 149 *on page 163*.

Replacing bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light

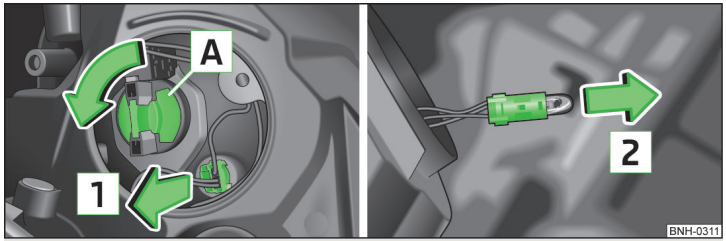

Fig. 151 **Bulbs for main beam, daytime running lights, and parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Removing/replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 149 *on page 163*.
› Turn the bulb holder A » Fig. 151 as far as it goes in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow as far as it goes.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 149 *on page 163* Insert.

Removing/replacing the bulb for the parking light

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 149 *on page 163*.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 151.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 149 *on page 163* Insert.

Changing the front turn signal bulb

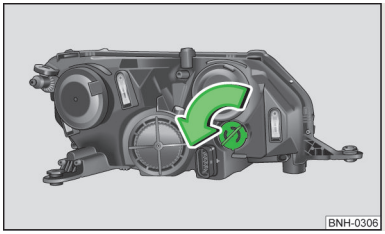

Fig. 152
Principle sketch: Bulb for indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

› Turn the socket with the bulb » Fig. 152 as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow and then remove it.
› Remove the bulb, insert the socket with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow to the stop.

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

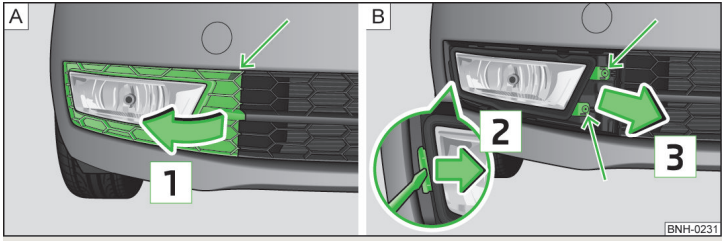

Fig. 153 **Front bumper: Protective grille/removing the fog light**

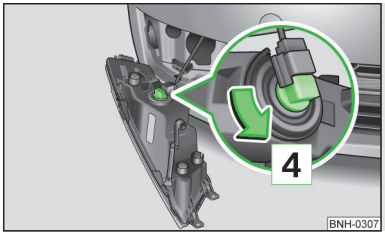

Fig. 154
Replacing the light bulb

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Removing the protective grille

› Undo the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 153 - A using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 146, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 153.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

› Unscrew the screws » Fig. 153 - B marked with the arrows[1)].
› Unlock the fuse in the direction of the arrow 2 with the screwdriver.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the connector » Fig. 154.
› Turn the lamp socket in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 154 and pull it out.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 4.
› Attach the connector.
› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 153 and tighten.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

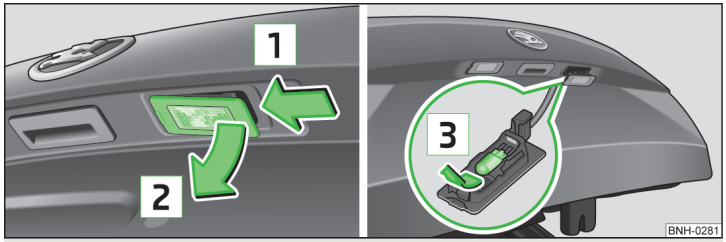

Fig. 155 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

› Open the boot lid.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 155.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

[1)] The screwdriver is part of the tool kit.

Rear lamp

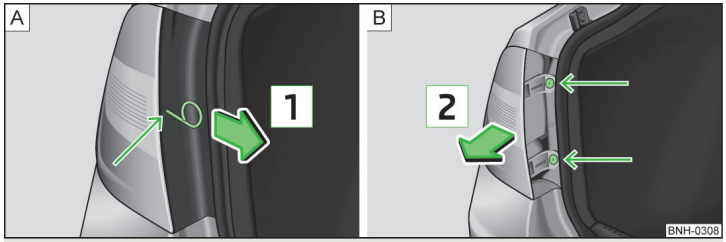

Fig. 156 **Remove cover / light**

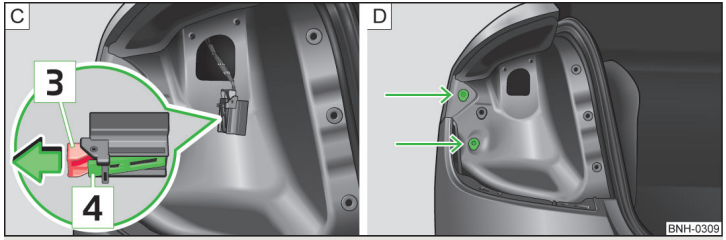

Fig. 157 **Installing the lamp connector/lamp**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 146, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 156 - A.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 1 - » Fig. 156.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 156 - B.
› Grasp the light and carefully remove with shaky movements in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the locking mechanism 3 » Fig. 157 C on the connector in the direction of the arrow.
› Press the latching mechanism 4 » Fig. 157 and remove the connector.

Installing

› Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
› Insert the lamp into the mounts in the body » Fig. 157 - D.
› Carefully press the tail lamp into the body so that the bolts 2 » Fig. 158 *on page 166* on the lamp engage into the mounts in the body » !.

Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light

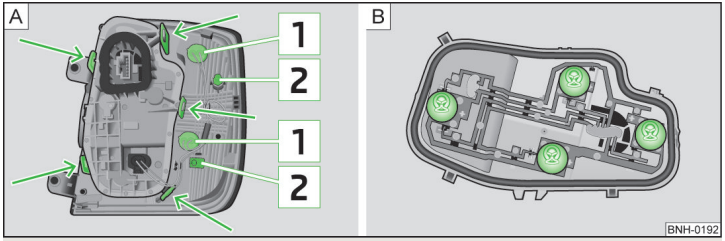

Fig. 158 **Outer part of the lamp/inner part of the lamp**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the bulb holder 1 » Fig. 158 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
› Replace the bulb, reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn to the stop in a **clockwise** direction.

Inner part of the lamp

› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches marked with arrows » Fig. 158 - A and remove the bulb holder from the tail lamp.
› Turn the respective bulb » Fig. 158 B until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.

All locking mechanisms must audibly snap into place.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle characteristics ____ 168
Operating weight and payload ____ 168
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives ____ 169
Dimensions ____ 170
Angle ____ 171
Vehicle-specific details per engine type ____ 172

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle characteristics

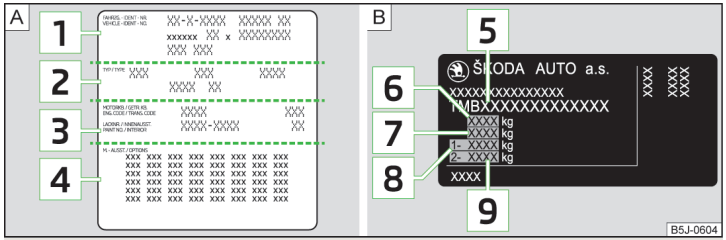

Fig. 159 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 159 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also stuck into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1. Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2. Vehicle type
3. Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4. Partial vehicle description

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 159 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

5. Vehicle identification number (VIN)
6. Maximum permissible gross weight
7. Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
8. Maximum permissible front axle load
9. Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight
This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » page 172, *Vehicle-specific details per engine type*.

Payload
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
› The weight of the passengers.
› The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
› The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
› The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note
▪ The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
▪ Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

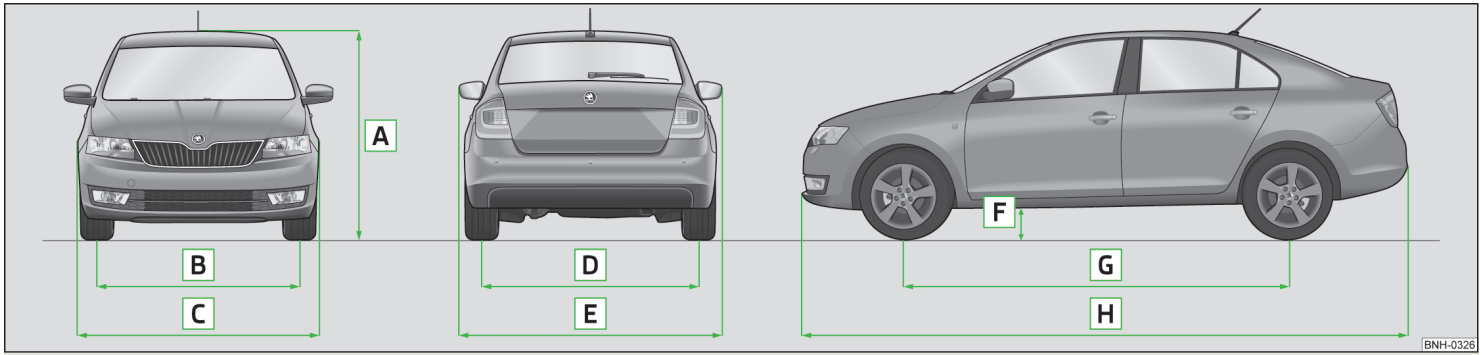

Fig. 160 **Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions (mm)

» Fig. 160	Specification		Value
A	Height	Basic dimension	1461/1488[a)]
		Vehicles with a rough road package.	1474/1500[a)]
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1457
		For vehicles fitted with the 1.2 l/55 kW MPI and 1.2 l/63 kW TSI engines and 14" wheel rims.	1463
C	Width		1706
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1494
		For vehicles fitted with the 1.2 l/55 kW MPI and 1.2 l/63 kW TSI engines and 14" wheel rims.	1500
E	Width including exterior mirror		1940
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	136
		Vehicles with a rough road package.	143
G	Wheel base		2602
H	Length		4483

[a)] Valid for vehicles with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Angle

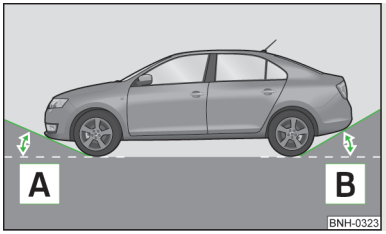

Fig. 161
Principle sketch: Departure angle

Angle » Fig. 161

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

Departure angle
Transition from the horizontal plane to an upward slope or from a downward slope back to the plane.

The angle indication determines the angle at which you can drive the vehicle down the embankment, at a slow speed, without the bumper or the underbody of the vehicle touching the ground.

Overhang angle (°)

Overhang angle, front	Overhang angle, rear
14	12.3

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 l/55 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
55/5400	112/3750	3/1198
Performance and Weights		**MG5**
Top speed (km/h)		175
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		13.9
Operating weight (in kg)		1135
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		750 [a] / 950[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		560

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
63/4800	160/1500-3500	4/1197
Performance and Weights		**MG5**
Top speed (km/h)		183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		11.8
Operating weight (in kg)		1155
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		900 [a] / 1100[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		570

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/5000	175/1550-4100	4/1197

Performance and Weights	MG6
Top speed (km/h)	195
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.3
Operating weight (in kg)	1175
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100 [a] / 1200 [b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	580

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
90/5000	200/1500-4000	4/1390

Performance and Weights	DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	206
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.5
Operating weight (in kg)	1230
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610

1.6 l/77 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/5600	153/3800	4/1598
Performance and Weights	**MG5**	**AG6**
Top speed (km/h)	193	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	11.9
Operating weight (in kg)	1155	1195
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1000 [a] / 1200[b]	1000 [a] / 1200[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	570	590

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 l./66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
66/4200	230/1500-2500	4/1598
Performance and Weights	**MG5**	**DSG7**
Top speed (km/h)	184/186[a]	184
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.0	12.2
Operating weight (in kg)	1265/1263[a]	1285
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200/1000[a]	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	630	640

[a] GreenLine

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/4400	250/1500-2500	4/1598

Performance and Weights	**MG5**
Top speed (km/h)	190
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.4
Operating weight (in kg)	1265
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	630

Index

A

abroad
lead-free petrol 126
Abroad
Headlights 58
ABS
Function 102
Warning light 33
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 117
Accessories 115
Adjusting
Belt height 13
Exterior mirror 62
head restraints 64
Interior mirror 62
Seat 64
Steering wheel 8
Adjusting the seats 7
Adjustment
Beam range 53
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 81
Airbag 14
Deactivating 18
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 18
Deployment 14
Front airbag 15
Head airbag 17
Indicator light 35
Modifications and damage to the airbag system 117
Side airbag 16
Airbag system 14
Air conditioning 80
Air distribution control 81
Climatronic 83
manual air conditioning 82
Air distribution control 81
Air outlet vents 81
Alarm
Switching off 49
Triggering 49
Alcantara
cleaning 124
Anti-theft alarm system
Activating/deactivating 50
Trailer 113
Antilock Braking System 102
Armrest
Front 66
Rear 67
artificial leather 124
Ashtray 70
ASR
warning light 33
Assist system
ABS 102
Assist systems 102
ABS 33
ASR 33
Cruise Control System 104
EDL 103
ESC 32, 102
HBA 103
HHC 103
Parking aid 103
START-STOP 105
TCS 102
Auto Check Control 29
Automatic driving lamp control 55
Automatic gearbox 97
Manual shifting of gears 99
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 158
Selector lever lock 98
Starting-off and driving 99
Tiptronic 99
Using the selector lever 98
Automatic gearbox modes 98
Automatic load deactivation 137
automatic transmission
selector lever lock defect 99
Automatic transmission
Kickdown 99
Selector lever lock 99
AUX 92

B

Ball head
Check fitting 110
Fitting 109
Ready position 109
Removing 111
Battery
In the remote control key 157
Belts 10
Belt tensioners 13
Bonnet
Closing 128
Opening 128
Boot
Class N1 vehicles 78
Double-sided floor covering 78
Hooks 76
See Boot lid 51
Storage compartments in the boot 78
Boot cover
Parking position 77
Boot lid
automatic locking 51
Closing 51
Opening 51
Brake
information messages 31
warning light 31
Brake booster 95
brake fluid
specification 134

Brake fluid 133
Checking 134
information messages 31
brake pedal (automatic gearbox)
indicator light 36
brakes
Driving in 100
Brakes
Brake booster 95
Brake fluid 134
Braking and stabilisation systems 102
Handbrake 96
Brakes and parking 95
Braking
Information on braking 95
Breakdown kit 151
bulb
rear lamp 166
Bulb
Warning light 33
Bulb failure
Warning light 33
Bulbs
Replacing 162
Buttons in the driver's door
Electric power windows 51

C

Car computer
See multifunction display 39
Care and maintenance 115
Car park ticket holder 68
Carrier 78
Cavity protection 121
Central locking 45
Central locking button 48
Change
Engine oil 130
Changing
Front turn signal bulb 164
Wheels 147
Changing a wheel
Follow-up work 149
Preliminary work 147
Remove and attaching a wheel 148
Charging a vehicle battery 136
Check
Fit ball head properly 110
Checking
Battery electrolyte level 136
Brake fluid 134
Coolant 133
Engine oil 131
Oil level 131
Windscreen washer fluid 130
Checks
Statutory checks 115
Children and safety 19
Child safety
Side airbag 21
Child safety lock 48
Child seat
Classification 21
ISOFIX 22
on the front passenger seat 20
TOP TETHER 23
Use of child seats 21
Use of ISOFIX child seats 22
Chrome parts
see vehicle care 120
Cigarette lighter 70
cleaning
chrome parts 120
Cleaning
Alcantara 124
and maintaining belts 124
artificial leather 124
headlight glasses 121
materials 124
natural leather 123
plastic parts 120
seats covers of the electrically heated seats 124
wheels 122
Cleaning safety
belt 124
Cleaning seat
covers 124
Cleaning the interior
artificial leather 124
Seat covers 124
Cleaning the outside of the vehicle
Decorative films 120
Cleaning the vehicle exterior
Cavity protection 121
Door locking cylinder 121
Headlight glasses 121
Under-body protection 122
wheels 122
Windows and external mirrors 121
Cleaning vehicle 118
Cleaning vehicle exterior 119
Plastic parts 120
Rubber seals 120
Vehicle paint work 119
Wiper blades 122
Clean interior
Safety belt 124
clean outside of vehicle
chrome parts 120
Climatronic
air distribution control 81
Operating elements 83
Clothes hook 74
Cockpit
12-Volt power outlet 71
Ashtray 70
Cigarette lighter 70
General view 25

Lights 58
storage compartments 68
useful equipment 68
COMING HOME 57
compartments 68
Computer
See multifunction display 39
convenience turn signal 55
Coolant 132
Checking 133
Indicator light 32
Information messages 32
Replenishing 133
Temperature gauge 27
Cooling system
cost-effective use 84
malfunctions 84
CORNER
See Fog lights with CORNER function 56
Correct seated position 7
Driver 7
Front passenger 8
Instructions 9
Rear seats 9
Counter for distance driven 28
cruise control
operation 104
operation Description 105
Cruise control system
Warning light 36
Cruise Control System 104
Cup holders 69

D

DAY LIGHT
See Daytime running lights 54
Daytime running lights 54
De-icing
windows 121
Deactivating an airbag 18
Decorative films 120
Defrsoting rear window 59
Delayed locking of the boot lid
see boot lid 51
Departure angle 171
Diesel
refer to Fuel 127
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 127
Diesel particulate filter
Information messages 34
Warning light 34
Digital Clock
Time 29
Dipstick 131
Disconnecting and reconnecting
vehicle battery 137
Display 27
Compass points 43
Coolant temperature 27
Fuel supply 28
Gear changes 38
Service intervals 43
Display a low temperature 38
Display of the second speed 29
Disposal
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 117
Distance driven 28
Door
Child safety lock 48
Closing 49
Emergency locking 157
Opening 49
Warning light door open 31
Door open
Warning light 31
Double-sided floor covering 78
Driving
Driving through water 101
Emissions 169
Fuel consumption 169
Maximum speed 172
off of made-up roads 101
Driving in
Brake linings 100
engine 100
Tyres 100
Driving off of made-up roads 101
Driving through water 101
Driving with a trailer 112

E

Economical driving
tips 100
Economical driving and environmental friendliness 100
EDL 103
Electrical power windows
Button in the driver's door 51
Button in the rear door 52
Buttons in the driver's door 52
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 103
Electronic immobilizer 93
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 102
Emergency
Changing a wheel 147
Hazard warning light system 57
jump-starting 154
Jump-starting 153
Locking the door without a locking cylinder 157
Selector lever-unlocking 158
Towing the using the tow hitch 156
Towing the vehicle 154
Tyre repair 151
Unlocking the tailgate 158
emergency equipment
reflective vest 145

Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 146
First aid kit 145
Jack 146
Vehicle tool kit 146
Warning triangle 145
emergency wheel 142
Emissions 169
Engine
Switching off the engine 94
Engine compartment 127
Brake fluid 134
Overview 129
Vehicle battery 134
Engine number 168
engine oil
information messages 31
specification 131
Engine oil 130
change 130
Checking 131
Replenishing 132
warning light 31
Environment 100
EPC
Warning light 34
ESC
Function 102
Warning light 32
Exhaust inspection system
Warning light 34

F

Fastening elements 76
Films 120
Fire extinguisher 146
First aid kit 145
Flashing 55
Fog lights 56
Warning light 36
Fog lights with CORNER function 56
Footmats 97
see footmats 97
Force limit
Power windows 52
Front airbag 15
Front interior light 58
fuel
lead-free petrol 126
Fuel 125
Diesel 127
Fuel gauge 28
refer to Fuel 125
Refuelling 125
Fuel consumption 100, 169
Fuel reserve
Warning light 35
Fuses
Assignment 159
Assignment of fuses in the dash panel 160
Colour coding 159
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment 162
Replacing 159
Fuses in the engine compartment
Assignment 162

G

Gearbox
Warning messages 29
Gear change
Gear recommendation 38
Information on the selected gear 38
Gear changing
Gear stick 97
gears
spare 143
General view
Cockpit 25
Generator
Indicator light 31
Genuine parts 116
Glasses compartment 73
Glow plug system
Warning light 34
GSM 85

H

Handbrake 96
Warning light 30
Hazard warning light system 57
HBA 103
Head airbag 17
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 61
Headlights
Bulb arrangement 163
Driving abroad 58
Headlight cleaning system 61
Headrest
removing and installing 65
Head restraints 64
Adjust height 64
Heating 80
Air distribution control 81
Control elements 82
Exterior mirror 62
Rear window 59
Seats 66
Heating rear window 59
HHC 103
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 103
Hitch 108
Drawback load 108
Hooks 76
Horn 25

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 103

I

Ice scrapers 121
Ignition
see ignition lock 94
Ignition lock 94
Immobilizer 93
Indicator lights 30
Individual settings
Locking 47
Unlocking 47
Inertia reels 13
Information system 37
Compass point display 43
Display a low temperature 38
Door warning 39
Gear recommendation 38
MAXI DOT display 42
Multifunction display 39
Operation 37
Service interval display 43
instrument cluster
Auto Check Control 29
Instrument cluster 26
Counter for distance driven 28
Display 27
Display of the second speed 29
Fuel gauge 28
Indicator lights 30
Overview 26
Revolution counter 27
see instrument cluster 26
Speedometer 27
Temperature gauge 27
Interior care 122
Natural leather 123
Interior monitor 50
ISOFIX 22

J

Jack 146
Jump-starting 153, 154

K

Key
Locking 47
Start the engine 94
Unlocking 47

L

Leather
Natural leather care 123
LEAVING HOME 57
Lever
Main beam 55
Turn signal 55
Windscreen wipers 61
lever lock selection (automatic gearbox)
indicator light 36
Light
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 57
Daytime running lights 54
Fog lights with CORNER function 56
Parking light 58
Replacing bulbs 162
Lighting
Luggage compartment 75
Lights 53
Automatic driving lamp control 55
Beam range adjustment 53
Cockpit 58
Fog lights 56
Hazard warning light system 57
Headlight flasher 55
Indicator lights 30
Low beam 53
Main beam 55
Parking light 53
Rear fog light 56
switching on/off 53
Turn signal 55
Lock/unlock steering lock 93
Locking
Individual settings 47
Key 47
Remote control 46
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside 48
Locking the door without a locking cylinder
Emergency 157
Low beam 53
Luggage compartment 75
Cover 77
Emergency unlocking 158
Fastening elements 76
Fixing nets 76
Lighting 75
Unlocking the tailgate 158
Luggage compartment cover 77
Luggage compartment lid 50

M

Main beam 55
Warning light 36
Maintenance
see vehicle care 119
Manual air conditioning
Air distribution control 81
Operating elements 82
Manual gear changing
see gear changing 97
MAXI DOT
See MAXI DOT display 42
MAXI DOT display 42
Main menu 42
Operation 37
Settings 42

Maximum
permissible weights 168
Maximum speed 172
MDI 92
MFD
See multifunction display 39
Mirror
Exterior mirror 62
Make-up 60
Mobile phone 85
Connecting to the hands-free system 87
Modifications 115
Modifications and technical alterations
Airbags 117
Service 116
Spoiler 117
Multifunction display
Functions 39
Information 40
Memory 39
Operation 37
Multimedia 90
Multimedia holder 72

N

N1 78
Nameplate 168
Nets 76

O

oil
information messages 31
Oil
See Engine oil 131
oil pressure
information messages 31
On-board computer
See multifunction display 39
Operating weight 168
Operation in winter
Diesel fuel 127
Vehicle battery 136
Original accessories 116
Outside temperature 40
Overview
Engine compartment 129
Indicator lights 30

P

Parking 96
Parking aid 103
Parking aid 103
Function 104
Parking light 53
Parking space 96
Parking vehicle
Parking 96
Part replacement 115
Passive safety
Before setting off 6
Driving safety 6
Safety equipment 6
Passive Safety 6
Payload 168
Pedals 97
Footmats 97
Petrol
see fuel 126
Plastic parts 120
Pockets on the front seat rests 74
Polishing vehicle paint work
see vehicle care 119
Power outlet
12 V 71
Power steering
Warning light 32
Practical equipment
Net pockets on the front seat rests 74
Reflective vest 145
Practical features
12-Volt power outlet 71
Storage pockets on the front seats 74
Waste container 71

R

Radiator fan 129
Raise vehicle 149
Rear fog light 56
Warning light 33
Rear interior light 59
Rear mirror 61
Exterior mirror 62
Interior mirror 62
Refuelling 125
Fuel 125
Remote control
Locking 46
Replacing the battery 157
Synchronisation process 157
Unlocking 46
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 157
Repairs and technical alterations 115
Replacing
Bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light 164
Bulb for the fog light 164
Bulb for the licence plate light 165
Bulb in rear light 166
Bulbs 162
Fuses 159
Fuses in the dash panel 160
Fuses in the engine compartment 161
Low beam bulb 163
Vehicle battery 137

Windscreen wiper blades 158
Wiper blades 159
Replenishing
Coolant 133
Engine oil 132
Windscreen washer fluid 130
Revolution counter 27
Roof
Load 79
Roof rack
mounting points 79
Roof load 79
Roof rack system 78
Rubber seals 120

S

SAFE
See Safe securing system 47
SAFELOCK
See Safe securing system 47
Safe securing system 47
Safety 6
Child safety 19
Child safety seats 19
Correct seated position 7
Head restraints 64
ISOFIX 22
TOP TETHER 23
Saving electrical energy 100
Seals
Vehicle care 120
Seat
Adjusting 64
Seat belt
warning light 31
Seat belts 10
Belt tensioners 13
fastening and unfastening 12
Height adjustment 13
Inertia reels 13
The physical principle of a frontal collision 11
Seat features 66
Seats
Front armrest 66
Head restraints 64
Heating 66
Rear armrest 67
Seat backrests 67
Seats and head restraint 63
Selector lever
Refer to Selector lever 98
Service 116
Service interval display 43
Setting 29
seats and head restraints 63
Setting the 29
Side airbag 16
Snow chains 144
Spare
change 143
spare wheel 142
change 143
instructions 143
Speedometer 27
See speedometer 27
Speed symbol
See Wheels 141
Spoiler 117
START-STOP 105
Manually deactivating/activating the system 107
Operating conditions of the system 106
operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox 106
operation in vehicles with manual gearbox 106
system-related automatic start-up 107
Starting engine
Jump-starting 153
Starting the engine
Jump-starting 154
START STOP
Information messages 107
Jump-starting 154
Start the engine 94
Stating and turning off the engine 93
Steering wheel 8
Stopping 96
Storage 68
Storage compartment
Glasses compartment 73
in the centre console 69
in the front arm rest 72
on the front passenger side 73
Storage compartments 68
Storage compartments in the boot 78
Storage pockets on the front seats 74
Stowage
compartments in the doors 68
Sun visors 60
Switching off the engine 94
Switch light on/off 53

T

Taking care of your vehicle
Automatic car wash system 118
High-pressure cleaner 119
Washing by hand 118
Wash system 118
TCS
Operation 102
Technical data 168
Telephone 85
Tiptronic 99
tire pressure monitor
display 142
Tools 146
TOP TETHER 23
Towing 154

Towing device
Description 108
Use and care 111
Towing eye
Front 155
Rear 156
Towing protection 50
Traction Control System (TCS) 102
Trailer 112
13-pin power socket 112
driving with a trailer 112
Loading 112
Safety eye 112
Trailer operation 108
Transport
Luggage compartment 75
Roof rack system 78
Transporting 68
Transporting children safely 19
Turn signal 55
Turn signal system
Warning light 36
two-way radio systems 85
Tyre inflation pressure
Warning light 35
Tyre load-bearing capacity
See Wheels 141
tyre pressure monitor
setting 142
Tyre repair
Check pressure 153
Preparations 152
Sealing and inflating the tyre 152
Tyres 138
Inflation pressure 139
new 100
New 140
See Wheels 140
Sizes 139
Tyre wear indicator 139

U

Under-body
Vehicle care 122
Under-body protection 122
Unlocking
Individual settings 47
Key 47
Remote control 46
Unlocking and locking 45
USB 92
Used vehicles
Acceptance and recycling 117
Useful equipment
Ashtray 70
Car park ticket holder 68
Cigarette lighter 70
Clothes hook 74
Cup holders 69
Glasses compartment 73
Multimedia holder 72
Storage compartment 68
Using the information system 37
Using the selector lever 98

V

Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 137
charging 136
Checking the battery electrolyte level 136
Cover 135
Operation in winter 136
Replacing 137
Safety instructions 134
vehicle care
chrome parts 120
Vehicle care
Alcantara 124
Artificial leather 124
Cavity protection 121
Cleaning vehicle exterior 119
Cleaning wheels 122
Decorative films 120
Door locking cylinder 121
Headlight glasses 121
Interior care 122
Maintenance 119
Materials 124
Natural leather 123
Plastic parts 120
Polishing vehicle paint work 119
Rubber seals 120
Safety belt 124
Seat covers 124
Under-body protections 122
washing 118
Vehicle Condition
see Auto Check Control 29
Vehicle data sticker 168
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate 168
Vehicle dimensions 170
Vehicle height 170
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 168
Vehicle length 170
Vehicle tool kit 146
Vehicle width 170
vest
holder for reflective vest 145
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 168
Visibility 59
Visors
See front sun visors 60

W

Warning at excessive speeds 41
Warning triangle 145

Washing
Automatic car wash system 118
by hand 118
High-pressure cleaner 119
Washing vehicles 118
Waste container 71
Water
Driving through 101
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolt 150
Caps 148
Loosening and tightening 149
Wheel rims 138
wheels
spare wheel 143
Wheels
Changing 147
Full trim 148
General information 138
Load index 141
Replacing wheels 139
Service life of tyres 139
Snow chains 144
Speed symbol 141
Storing wheels 139
Tyre pressure 139
Tyre sizes 139
Tyre wear indicator 139
Unidirectional tyres 141
Winter tyres 143
Window
Interior mirror 62
Windows
See electric power windows 51
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 130
Replenishing 130
Warning light 36
Winter 130
Windscreen washer system 130
Windscreen wipers 61
Windscreen wiper
Replacing the front windscreen wiper blades 158
Service position 158
Windscreen wipers
Activating 61
Replacing the rear window glass wiper blades 159
Windscreen washer fluid 130
Windscreen wipers and washers 60
Winter operation 143
De-icing windows 121
Snow chains 144
Winter tyres 143
Winter tyres
See Wheels 143
Wiper blades 122
Wipers
Maintaining wiper blades 122

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or might only be offered in certain markets; information is provided by ŠKODA Partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2014

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review

Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

› Navigation through the **list of content**
› Classical **reading page by page**
› **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
› **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♻ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Rapid anglicky 05.2014
S56.5610.08.20
5JA 012 720 AE

5JA012720AE